

Project Manual

Douglas County Community Services Dangberg Ranch Exterior Restoration



Bid Documents

May 18, 2022

Paul Cavin Architect LLC

1575 Delucchi Lane, Suite 120 • Reno • Nevada • 89502 • mobile: 775-842-0261 • office: 775-284-7083
paul@paulcavindesign.com • www.paulcavindesign.com

00 00 01 PROJECT TEAM

OWNER

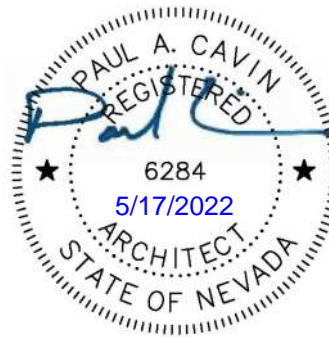
Dangberg Home Ranch
1450 NV-88
Minden, Nevada 89423
Phone: (775)
Contact: Mark Jensen
e-mail: curator@dangberghomeranch.org

MANAGING AGENCY

Douglas County Community Services
1594 Esmeralda Avenue
Minden, Nevada 89423
Phone: (775) 790- 5212
Contact: Scott McCullough
e-mail: smccullough@douglasnv.us

ARCHITECTURE

Paul Cavin Architect LLC
1575 Delucchi Lane, Suite 120
Reno, Nevada 89502
Phone: (775) 842-0261
Contact: Paul Cavin, AIA
e-mail: paul@paulcavindesign.com
Contact: Mike Maddox
e-mail: mike@paulcavindesign.com



00 00 10 PROJECT MANUAL INDEX

00 00 00	Cover
00 00 01	Project Team
00 00 10	Project Index
00 00 30	U.S. Department of the Interior National Park Service Cultural Resources
	Preservation Briefs #1 Assessing Cleaning and Water-Repellent Treatments for Historic Buildings
	Preservation Briefs #6 Dangers of Abrasive Cleaning to Historic Buildings
	Preservation Briefs #9 The Repair of Historic Wooden Windows
	Preservation Briefs #10 Exterior Paint Problems on Historic Woodwork

DIVISION 01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

01 10 00	Summary
01 23 00	Alternates
01 25 00	Substitution Procedures
01 26 00	Contract Modification Procedures
01 29 00	Payment Procedures
01 31 00	Project Management and Coordination
01 32 00	Construction Progress Documentation
01 32 33	Photographic Documentation
01 33 00	Submittal Procedures
01 35 16	Alteration Project Procedures
01 35 91	Protection Salvage and Treatment Procedures for Historic Building Materials
01 40 00	Quality Requirements
01 42 00	References
01 50 00	Temporary Facilities and Controls
01 60 00	Product Requirements
01 73 00	Execution
01 74 19	Construction Waste Management and Controls
01 77 00	Closeout Procedures
01 78 23	Operation and Maintenance Data
01 78 39	Project Record Documents

DIVISION 06 WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

06 30 00.01	Epoxy Repair for Deterioration and Decay in Wooden Members
-------------	--

DIVISION 07 THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

07 92 00	Joint Sealants
----------	----------------

DIVISION 09 FINISHES

09 91 13	Exterior Painting
09 93 00	Staining and Transparent Finishing

1 PRESERVATION BRIEFS

Assessing Cleaning and Water-Repellent Treatments for Historic Masonry Buildings

Robert C. Mack, AIA
Anne Grimmer



U.S. Department of the Interior
National Park Service
Cultural Resources
Heritage Preservation Services

Inappropriate cleaning and coating treatments are a major cause of damage to historic masonry buildings. While either or both treatments may be appropriate in some cases, they can be very destructive to historic masonry if they are not selected carefully. Historic masonry, as considered here, includes stone, brick, architectural terra cotta, cast stone, concrete and concrete block. It is frequently cleaned because cleaning is equated with improvement. Cleaning may sometimes be followed by the application of a water-repellent coating. However, unless these procedures are carried out under the guidance and supervision of an architectural conservator, they may result in irrevocable damage to the historic resource.

The purpose of this Brief is to provide information on the variety of cleaning methods and materials that are available for use on the *exterior* of historic masonry buildings, and to provide guidance in selecting the most appropriate method or combination of methods. The difference between

water-repellent coatings and waterproof coatings is explained, and the purpose of each, the suitability of their application to historic masonry buildings, and the possible consequences of their inappropriate use are discussed.

The Brief is intended to help develop sensitivity to the qualities of historic masonry that makes it so special, and to assist historic building owners and property managers in working cooperatively with architects, architectural conservators and contractors (Fig. 1). Although specifically intended for historic buildings, the information is applicable to all masonry buildings. This publication updates and expands *Preservation Brief 1: The Cleaning and Waterproof Coating of Masonry Buildings*. The Brief is not meant to be a cleaning manual or a guide for preparing specifications. Rather, it provides general information to raise awareness of the many factors involved in selecting cleaning and water-repellent treatments for historic masonry buildings.



Figure 1. Low-to medium-pressure steam (hot-pressurized water washing), is being used to clean the exterior of the U.S. Tariff Commission Building, the first marble building constructed in Washington, D.C., in 1839. This method was selected by an architectural conservator as the "gentlest means possible" to clean the marble. Steam can soften heavy soiling deposits such as those on the cornice and column capitals, and facilitate easy removal. Note how these deposits have been removed from the right side of the cornice which has already been cleaned.

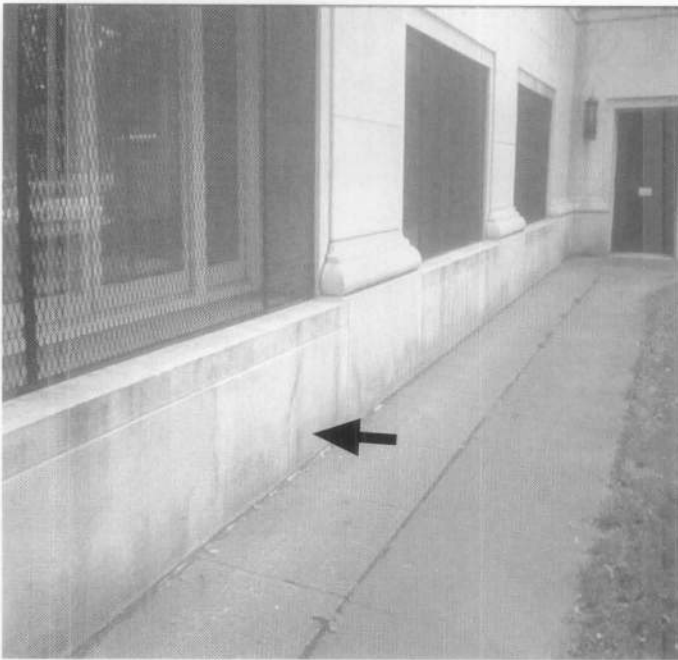


Figure 2. Biological growth as shown on this marble foundation can usually be removed using a low-pressure water wash, possibly with a non-ionic detergent added to it, and scrubbing with a natural or synthetic bristle brush.



Figure 3. This small test area has revealed a red brick patch that does not match the original beige brick. This may explain why the building was painted, and may suggest to the owner that it may be preferable to keep it painted.

Preparing for a Cleaning Project

Reasons for cleaning. First, it is important to determine whether it is appropriate to clean the masonry. The objective of cleaning a historic masonry building must be considered carefully before arriving at a decision to clean. There are several major reasons for cleaning a historic masonry building: **improve the appearance of the building** by removing unattractive dirt or soiling materials, or non-historic paint from the masonry; **retard deterioration** by removing soiling materials that may be damaging the masonry; or **provide a clean surface** to accurately match repointing mortars or patching compounds, or to conduct a condition survey of the masonry.

Identify what is to be removed. The general nature and source of dirt or soiling material on a building must be identified to remove it in the *gentlest means possible* — that is, in the most effective, yet least harmful, manner. Soot and smoke, for example, require a different cleaning agent to remove than oil stains or metallic stains. Other common cleaning problems include biological growth such as mold or mildew, and organic matter such as the tendrils left on masonry after removal of ivy (Fig. 2).

Consider the historic appearance of the building. If the proposed cleaning is to remove paint, it is important in each case to learn whether or not unpainted masonry is historically appropriate. And, it is necessary to consider why the building was painted (Fig. 3). Was it to cover bad repointing or unmatched repairs? Was the building painted to protect soft brick or to conceal deteriorating stone? Or, was painted masonry simply a fashionable

treatment in a particular historic period? Many buildings were painted at the time of construction or shortly thereafter; retention of the paint, therefore, may be more appropriate historically than removing it. And, if the building appears to have been painted for a long time, it is also important to think about whether the paint is part of the character of the historic building and if it has acquired significance over time.

Consider the practicalities of cleaning or paint removal. Some gypsum or sulfate crusts may have become integral with the stone and, if cleaning could result in removing some of the stone surface, it may be preferable not to clean. Even where unpainted masonry is appropriate, the retention of the paint may be more practical than removal in terms of long range preservation of the masonry. In some cases, however, removal of the paint may be desirable. For example, the old paint layers may have built up to such an extent that removal is necessary to ensure a sound surface to which the new paint will adhere.

Study the masonry. Although not always necessary, in some instances it can be beneficial to have the coating or paint type, color, and layering on the masonry researched before attempting its removal. Analysis of the nature of the soiling or of the paint to be removed from the masonry, as well as guidance on the appropriate cleaning method, may be provided by professional consultants, including architectural conservators, conservation scientists and preservation architects. The State Historic Preservation Office (SHPO), local historic district commissions, architectural review boards and preservation-oriented websites may also be able to supply useful information on masonry cleaning techniques.

Understanding the Building Materials

The construction of the building must be considered when developing a cleaning program because inappropriate cleaning can have a deleterious effect on the masonry as well as on other building materials. The masonry material or materials must be correctly identified. It is sometimes difficult to distinguish one type of stone from another; for example, certain sandstones can be easily confused with limestones. Or, what appears to be natural stone may not be stone at all, but cast stone or concrete. Historically, cast stone and architectural terra cotta were frequently used in combination with natural stone, especially for trim elements or on upper stories of a building where, from a distance, these substitute materials looked like real stone (Fig. 4). Other features on historic buildings that appear to be stone, such as decorative cornices, entablatures and window hoods, may not even be masonry, but metal.

Identify prior treatments. Previous treatments of the building and its surroundings should be researched and building maintenance records should be obtained, if available. Sometimes if streaked or spotty areas do not seem to get cleaner following an initial cleaning, closer inspection and analysis may be warranted. The discoloration may turn out not to be dirt but the remnant of a water-repellent coating applied long ago which has darkened the surface of the masonry over time (Fig. 5). Successful removal may require testing several cleaning agents to find something that will dissolve and remove the coating. Complete removal may not always be possible. Repairs may have been stained to match a dirty building, and cleaning may make these differences apparent. De-icing salts used near the building that have dissolved can



Figure 4. The foundation of this brick building is limestone, but the decorative trim above is architectural terra cotta intended to simulate stone.



Figure 5. Repeated water washing did not remove the staining inside this limestone porte cochere. Upon closer examination, it was determined to be a water-repellent coating that had been applied many years earlier. An alkaline cleaner may be effective in removing it.

migrate into the masonry. Cleaning may draw the salts to the surface, where they will appear as efflorescence (a powdery, white substance), which may require a second treatment to be removed. Allowances for dealing with such unknown factors, any of which can be a potential problem, should be included when investigating cleaning methods and materials. Just as more than one kind of masonry on a historic building may necessitate multiple cleaning approaches, unknown conditions that are encountered may also require additional cleaning treatments.

Choose the appropriate cleaner. The importance of testing cleaning methods and materials cannot be over emphasized. Applying the wrong cleaning agents to historic masonry can have disastrous results. Acidic cleaners can be extremely damaging to acid-sensitive stones, such as marble and limestone, resulting in etching and dissolution of these stones. Other kinds of masonry can also be damaged by incompatible cleaning agents, or even by cleaning agents that are usually compatible. There are also numerous kinds of sandstone, each with a considerably different geological composition. While an acid-based cleaner may be safely used on some sandstones, others are acid-sensitive and can be severely etched or dissolved by an acid cleaner. Some sandstones contain water-soluble minerals and can be eroded by water cleaning. And, even if the stone type is correctly identified, stones, as well as some bricks, may contain unexpected impurities, such as iron particles, that may react negatively with a particular cleaning agent and result in staining. Thorough understanding of the physical and chemical properties of the masonry will help avoid the inadvertent selection of damaging cleaning agents.

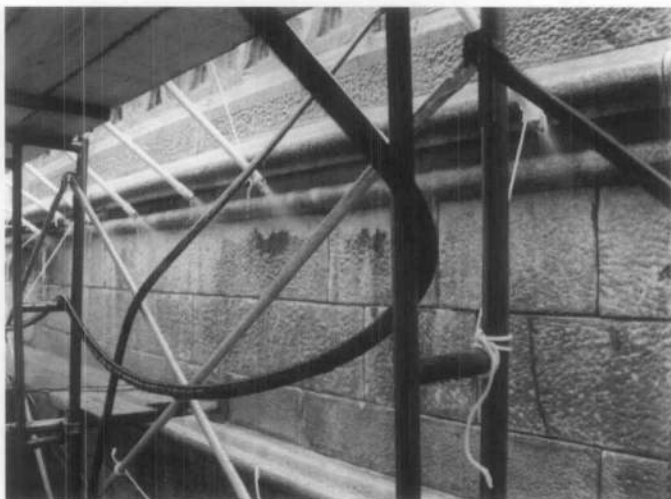


Figure 6. Timed water soaking can be very effective for cleaning limestone and marble as shown here at the Marble Collegiate Church in New York City. In this case, a twelve-hour water soak using a multi-nozzle manifold was followed by a final water rinse. Photo: Diane S. Kaese, Wiss, Janney, Elstner Associates, Inc., N.Y., N.Y.

Other building materials also may be affected by the cleaning process. Some chemicals, for example, may have a corrosive effect on paint or glass. The portions of building elements most vulnerable to deterioration may not be visible, such as embedded ends of iron window bars. Other totally unseen items, such as iron cramps or ties which hold the masonry to the structural frame, also may be subject to corrosion from the use of chemicals or even from plain water. The only way to prevent problems in these cases is to study the building construction in detail and evaluate proposed cleaning methods with this information in mind. However, due to the very likely possibility of encountering unknown factors, any cleaning project involving historic masonry should be viewed as unique to that particular building.

Cleaning Methods and Materials

Masonry cleaning methods generally are divided into three major groups: water, chemical, and abrasive. *Water methods* soften the dirt or soiling material and rinse the deposits from the masonry surface. *Chemical cleaners* react with dirt, soiling material or paint to effect their removal, after which the cleaning effluent is rinsed off the masonry surface with water. *Abrasive methods* include blasting with grit, and the use of grinders and sanding discs, all of which mechanically remove the dirt, soiling material or paint (and, usually, some of the masonry surface). Abrasive cleaning is also often followed with a water rinse. *Laser cleaning*, although not discussed here in detail, is another technique that is used sometimes by conservators to clean small areas of historic masonry. It can be quite effective for cleaning limited areas, but it is expensive and generally not practical for most historic masonry cleaning projects.

Although it may seem contrary to common sense, masonry cleaning projects should be carried out starting at the

bottom and proceeding to the top of the building always keeping all surfaces wet below the area being cleaned. The rationale for this approach is based on the principle that dirty water or cleaning effluent dripping from cleaning in progress above will leave streaks on a dirty surface but will not streak a clean surface as long as it is kept wet and rinsed frequently.

Water Cleaning

Water cleaning methods are generally the *gentlest means possible*, and they can be used safely to remove dirt from all types of historic masonry.* There are essentially four kinds of water-based methods: soaking; pressure water washing; water washing supplemented with non-ionic detergent; and steam, or hot-pressurized water cleaning. Once water cleaning has been completed, it is often necessary to follow up with a water rinse to wash off the loosened soiling material from the masonry.

Soaking. Prolonged spraying or misting with water is particularly effective for cleaning limestone and marble. It is also a good method for removing heavy accumulations of soot, sulfate crusts or gypsum crusts that tend to form in protected areas of a building not regularly washed by rain. Water is distributed to lengths of punctured hose or pipe with non-ferrous fittings hung from moveable scaffolding or a swing stage that continuously mists the surface of the masonry with a very fine spray (Fig. 6). A timed on-off spray is another approach to using this cleaning technique. After one area has been cleaned, the apparatus is moved on to another. Soaking is often used in combination with water washing and is also followed by a final water rinse. Soaking is a very slow method—it may take several days or a week—but it is a very gentle method to use on historic masonry.

Water Washing. Washing with low-pressure or medium-pressure water is probably one of the most commonly used methods for removing dirt or other pollutant soiling from historic masonry buildings (Fig. 7). Starting with a very low pressure (100 psi or below), even using a garden hose, and progressing as needed to slightly higher pressure—generally no higher than 300-400 psi—is always the recommended way to begin. Scrubbing with natural bristle or synthetic bristle brushes—never metal which can abrade the surface and leave metal particles that can stain the masonry—can help in cleaning areas of the masonry that are especially dirty.

Water Washing with Detergents. Non-ionic detergents—which are not the same as soaps—are synthetic organic compounds that are especially effective in removing oily soil. (Examples of some of the numerous proprietary non-ionic detergents include Igepal by GAF, Tergitol by Union Carbide and Triton by Rohm & Haas.) Thus, the addition of a non-ionic detergent, or surfactant, to a low- or medium-pressure water wash can be a useful aid in the cleaning

*Water cleaning methods may not be appropriate to use on some badly deteriorated masonry because water may exacerbate the deterioration, or on gypsum or alabaster which are very soluble in water.

process. (A non-ionic detergent, unlike most household detergents, does not leave a solid, visible residue on the masonry.) Adding a non-ionic detergent and scrubbing with a natural bristle or synthetic bristle brush can facilitate cleaning textured or intricately carved masonry. This should be followed with a final water rinse.

Steam/Hot-Pressurized Water Cleaning. Steam cleaning is actually low-pressure hot water washing because the steam condenses almost immediately upon leaving the hose. This is a gentle and effective method for cleaning stone and particularly for acid-sensitive stones. Steam can be especially useful in removing built-up soiling deposits and dried-up plant materials, such as ivy disks and tendrils. It can also be an efficient means of cleaning carved stone details and, because it does not generate a lot of liquid water, it can sometimes be appropriate to use for cleaning interior masonry (Figs. 8-9).

Potential hazards of water cleaning. Despite the fact that water-based methods are generally the most gentle, even they can be damaging to historic masonry. Before beginning a water cleaning project, it is important to make sure that all mortar joints are sound and that the building is watertight. Otherwise water can seep through the walls to the interior, resulting in rusting metal anchors and stained and ruined plaster.

Some water supplies may contain traces of iron and copper which may cause masonry to discolor. Adding a chelating or complexing agent to the water, such as EDTA (ethylene diamine tetra-acetic acid), which inactivates other metallic ions, as well as softens minerals and water hardness, will help prevent staining on light-colored masonry.

Any cleaning method involving water should never be done in cold weather or if there is any likelihood of frost or freezing because water within the masonry can freeze, causing spalling and cracking. Since a masonry wall may take over a week to dry after cleaning, no water cleaning should be permitted for several days prior to the first average frost date, or even earlier if local forecasts predict cold weather.

Most essential of all, it is important to be aware that using water at too high a pressure, a practice common to "power washing" and "water blasting", is very abrasive and can easily etch marble and other soft stones, as well as some types of brick (Figs. 10-11). In addition, the distance of the nozzle from the masonry surface and the type of nozzle, as well as gallons per minute (gpm), are also important variables in a water cleaning process that can have a significant impact on the outcome of the project. This is why it is imperative that the cleaning be closely monitored to ensure that the cleaning operators do not raise the pressure or bring the nozzle too close to the masonry in an effort to "speed up" the process. The appearance of grains of stone or sand in the cleaning effluent on the ground is an indication that the water pressure may be too high.



Figure 7. Glazed architectural terra cotta often may be cleaned successfully with a low-pressure water wash and hand scrubbing supplemented, if necessary, with a non-ionic detergent. Photo: National Park Service Files.

Chemical Cleaning

Chemical cleaners, generally in the form of proprietary products, are another material frequently used to clean historic masonry. They can remove dirt, as well as paint and other coatings, metallic and plant stains, and graffiti. Chemical cleaners used to remove dirt and soiling include **acids**, **alkalies** and **organic compounds**. Acidic cleaners, of course, should not be used on masonry that is acid sensitive. Paint removers are **alkaline**, based on **organic solvents** or other chemicals.

Chemical Cleaners to Remove Dirt

Both alkaline and acidic cleaning treatments include the use of water. Both cleaners are also likely to contain surfactants (wetting agents), that facilitate the chemical reaction that removes the dirt. Generally, the masonry is wet first for both types of cleaners, then the chemical cleaner is sprayed on at very low pressure or brushed onto the surface. The cleaner is left to dwell on the masonry for an amount of time recommended by the product manufacturer or, preferably, determined by testing, and rinsed off with a low- or moderate-pressure cold, or sometimes hot, water wash. More than one application of the cleaner may be necessary, and it is always a good practice to test the product manufacturer's recommendations concerning dilution rates and dwell times. Because each cleaning situation is unique, dilution rates and dwell times can vary considerably. The masonry surface may be scrubbed lightly with natural or synthetic bristle brushes prior to rinsing. After rinsing, pH strips should be applied to the surface to ensure that the masonry has been neutralized completely.

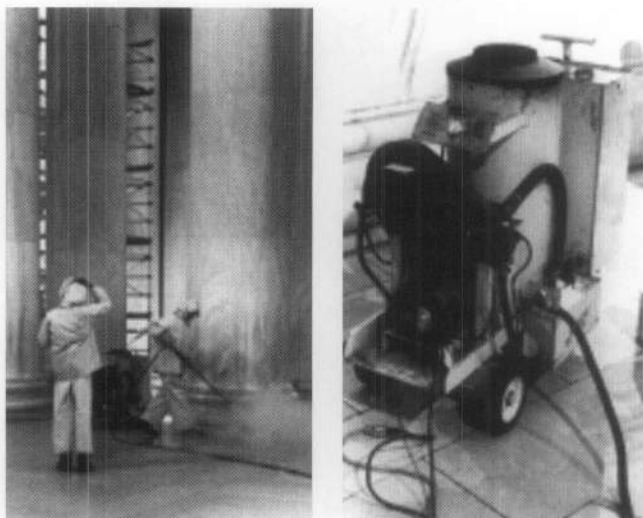


Figure 8. (Left) Low-pressure (under 100 psi) steam cleaning (hot-pressurized water washing), is part of the regular maintenance program at the Jefferson Memorial, Washington, D.C. The white marble interior of this open structure is subject to constant soiling by birds, insects and visitors. (Right) This portable steam cleaner enables prompt cleanup when necessary. Photos: National Park Service Files.

Acidic Cleaners. Acid-based cleaning products may be used on **non-acid sensitive** masonry, which generally includes: granite, most sandstones, slate, unglazed brick and unglazed architectural terra cotta, cast stone and concrete (Fig. 12). Most commercial acidic cleaners are composed primarily of hydrofluoric acid, and often include some phosphoric acid to prevent rust-like stains from developing on the masonry after the cleaning. Acid cleaners are applied to the pre-wet masonry which should be kept wet while the acid is allowed to "work", and then removed with a water wash.

Alkaline Cleaners. Alkaline cleaners should be used on **acid-sensitive** masonry, including: limestone, polished and unpolished marble, calcareous sandstone, glazed brick and glazed architectural terra cotta, and polished granite. (Alkaline cleaners may also be used sometimes on masonry materials that are not acid sensitive—after testing, of course

—but they may not be as effective as they are on acid-sensitive masonry.) Alkaline cleaning products consist primarily of two ingredients: a non-ionic detergent or surfactant; and an alkali, such as potassium hydroxide or ammonium hydroxide. Like acidic cleaners, alkaline products are usually applied to pre-wet masonry, allowed to dwell, and then rinsed off with water. (Longer dwell times may be necessary with alkaline cleaners than with acidic cleaners.) Two additional steps are required to remove alkaline cleaners after the initial rinse. First the masonry is given a slightly acidic wash—often with acetic acid—to neutralize it, and then it is rinsed again with water.

Chemical Cleaners to Remove Paint and Other Coatings, Stains and Graffiti

Removing paint and some other coatings, stains and graffiti can best be accomplished with alkaline paint removers, organic solvent paint removers, or other cleaning compounds. The removal of layers of paint from a masonry surface usually involves applying the remover either by brush, roller or spraying, followed by a thorough water wash. As with any chemical cleaning, the manufacturer's recommendations regarding application procedures should always be tested before beginning work.

Alkaline Paint Removers. These are usually of much the same composition as other alkaline cleaners, containing potassium or ammonium hydroxide, or trisodium phosphate. They are used to remove oil, latex and acrylic paints, and are effective for removing multiple layers of paint. Alkaline cleaners may also remove some acrylic, water-repellent coatings. As with other alkaline cleaners, both an acidic neutralizing wash and a final water rinse are generally required following the use of alkaline paint removers.

Organic Solvent Paint Removers. The formulation of organic solvent paint removers varies and may include a combination of solvents, including methylene chloride, methanol, acetone, xylene and toluene.

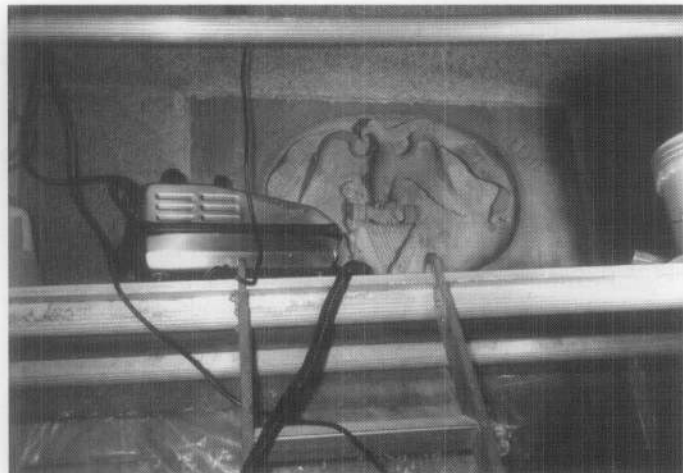


Figure 9. (Left) This small steam cleaner—the size of a vacuum cleaner—offers a very controlled and gentle means of cleaning limited, or hard-to-reach areas or carved stone details. (Right) It is particularly useful for interiors where it is important to keep moisture to a minimum, such as inside the Washington Monument, Washington, D.C., where it was used to clean the commemorative stones. Photos: Audrey T. Tepper.



Figure 10. High-pressure water washing too close to the surface has abraded and, consequently, marred the limestone on this early-20th century building.

Other Paint Removers and Cleaners. Other cleaning compounds that can be used to remove paint and some painted graffiti from historic masonry include paint removers based on N-methyl-2-pyrrolidone (NMP), or on petroleum-based compounds. Removing stains, whether they are industrial (smoke, soot, grease or tar), metallic (iron or copper), or biological (plant and fungal) in origin, depends on carefully matching the type of remover to the type of stain (Fig. 13). Successful removal of stains from historic masonry often requires the application of a number of different removers before the right one is found. The removal of layers of paint from a masonry surface is usually accomplished by applying the remover either by brush, roller or spraying, followed by a thorough water wash (Fig. 14).

Potential hazards of chemical cleaning. Since most chemical cleaning methods involve water, they have many of the potential problems of plain water cleaning. Like water methods, they should not be used in cold weather because of the possibility of freezing. Chemical cleaning should never be undertaken in temperatures below 40 degrees F (4 degrees C), and generally not below 50 degrees F. In addition, many chemical cleaners simply do not work in cold temperatures. Both acidic and alkaline cleaners can be dangerous to cleaning operators and, clearly, there are environmental concerns associated with the use of chemical cleaners.



Figure 11. Rinsing with high-pressure water following chemical cleaning has left a horizontal line of abrasion across the bricks on this late-19th century row house.

If not carefully chosen, chemical cleaners can react adversely with many types of masonry. Obviously, acidic cleaners should not be used on acid-sensitive materials; however, it is not always clear exactly what the composition is of any stone or other masonry material. For this reason, testing the cleaner on an inconspicuous spot on the building is always necessary. While certain acid-based cleaners may be appropriate if used as directed on a particular type of masonry, if left too long or if not adequately rinsed from the masonry they can have a negative effect. For example, hydrofluoric acid can etch masonry leaving a hazy residue (whitish deposits of silica or calcium fluoride salts) on the surface. While this efflorescence may usually be removed by a second cleaning—although it is likely to be expensive and time-consuming—hydrofluoric acid can also leave calcium fluoride salts or a colloidal silica deposit on masonry which may be impossible to remove (Fig. 15). Other acids, particularly hydrochloric (muriatic) acid, which is very powerful, should not be used on historic masonry, because it can dissolve lime-based mortar, damage brick and some stones, and leave chloride deposits on the masonry.



Figure 12. A mild acidic cleaning agent is being used to clean this heavily soiled brick and granite building. Additional applications of the cleaner and hand-scrubbing, and even poulticing, may be necessary to remove the dark stains on the granite arches below. Photo: Sharon C. Park, FAIA.

Alkaline cleaners can stain sandstones that contain a ferrous compound. Before using an alkaline cleaner on sandstone it is always important to test it, since it may be difficult to know whether a particular sandstone may contain a ferrous compound. Some alkaline cleaners, such as **sodium hydroxide (caustic soda or lye)** and **ammonium bifluoride**, can also damage or leave disfiguring brownish-yellow stains and, in most cases, should not be used on historic masonry. Although alkaline cleaners will not etch a masonry surface as acids can, they are caustic and can burn the surface. In addition, alkaline cleaners can deposit potentially damaging salts in the masonry which can be difficult to rinse thoroughly.

Abrasive and Mechanical Cleaning

Generally, abrasive cleaning methods are not appropriate for use on historic masonry buildings. Abrasive cleaning methods are just that—abrasive. Grit blasters, grinders, and sanding discs all operate by *abrading* the dirt or paint off the surface of the masonry, rather than *reacting* with the dirt and the masonry which is how water and chemical methods work. Since the abrasives do not differentiate between the dirt and the masonry, they can also remove the outer surface of the masonry at the same time, and result in permanently damaging the masonry. Brick, architectural terra cotta, soft stone, detailed carvings, and polished surfaces are especially susceptible to physical and aesthetic damage by abrasive methods. Brick and architectural terra cotta are fired products which have a smooth, glazed surface which can be removed by abrasive blasting or grinding (Figs. 18-19). Abrasively-cleaned masonry is damaged aesthetically as well as physically, and it has a rough surface which tends to hold dirt and the roughness will make future cleaning more difficult. Abrasive cleaning processes can also increase the likelihood of subsurface cracking of the masonry. Abrasion of carved details causes a rounding of sharp corners and other loss of delicate features, while abrasion of polished surfaces removes the polished finish of stone.

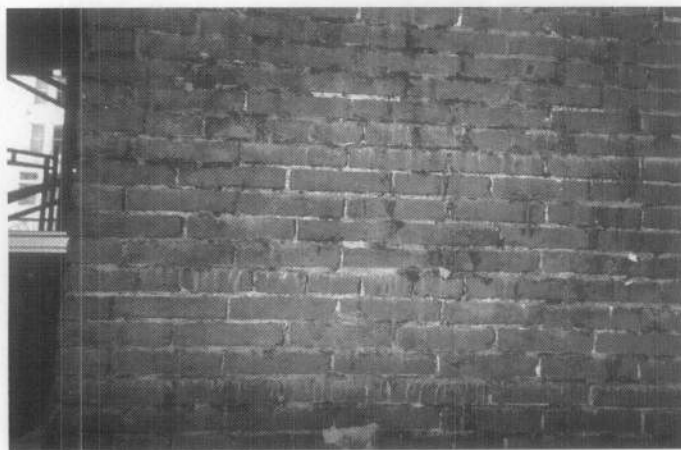


Figure 13. Sometimes it may be preferable to paint over a thick asphaltic coating rather than try to remove it, because it can be difficult to remove completely. However, in this case, many layers of asphaltic coating were removed through multiple applications of a heavy duty chemical cleaner. Each application of the cleaner was left to dwell following the manufacturer's recommendations, and then rinsed thoroughly. (As much as possible of the asphalt was first removed with wooden scrapers.) Although not all the asphalt was removed, this was determined to be an acceptable level of cleanliness for the project.



Figure 14. Chemical removal of paint from this brick building has revealed that the cornice and window hoods are metal rather than masonry.

Mortar joints, especially those with lime mortar, also can be eroded by abrasive or mechanical cleaning. In some cases, the damage may be visual, such as loss of joint detail or increased joint shadows. As mortar joints constitute a significant portion of the masonry surface (up to 20 per cent in a brick wall), this can result in the loss of a considerable amount of the historic fabric. Erosion of the mortar joints may also permit increased water penetration, which will likely necessitate repointing.



Figure 15. The whitish deposits left on the brick by a chemical paint remover may have resulted from inadequate rinsing or from the chemical being left on the surface too long and may be impossible to remove.

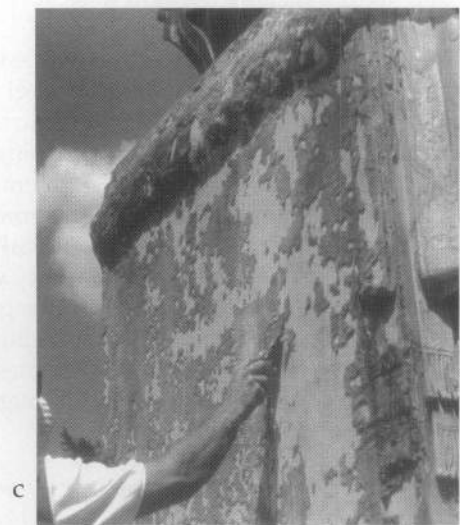
Poulticing to Remove Stains and Graffiti



a



b



c



d

Figure 16. (a) The limestone base was heavily stained by runoff from the bronze statue above. (b) A poultice consisting of copper stain remover and ammonia mixed with fuller's earth was applied to the stone base and covered with plastic sheeting to keep it from drying out too quickly. (c) As the poultice dried, it pulled the stain out of the stone. (d) The poultice residue was removed carefully from the stone surface with wooden scrapers and the stone was rinsed with water. Photos: John Dugger.

Graffiti and stains, which have penetrated into the masonry, often are best removed by using a poultice. A poultice consists of an absorbent material or clay powder (such as kaolin or fuller's earth, or even shredded paper or paper towels), mixed with a liquid (solvent or other remover) to form a paste which is applied to the stain (Figs. 16-17). As it dries, the paste absorbs the staining material so that it is not redeposited on the masonry surface. Some commercial cleaning products and paint removers are specially formulated as a paste or gel that will cling to a vertical surface and remain moist for a longer period of time in order to prolong the action of the chemical on the stain. Pre-mixed poultices are also available as a paste or in powder form needing only the addition of the appropriate liquid. The masonry must be pre-wet before applying an alkaline cleaning agent, but not when using a solvent. Once the stain has been removed, the masonry must be rinsed thoroughly.



Figure 17. A poultice is being used to remove salts from the brownstone statuary on the facade of this late-19th century stone church. Photo: National Park Service Files.



Figure 18. The glazed bricks in the center of the pier were covered by a signboard that protected them from being damaged by the sandblasting which removed the glaze from the surrounding bricks.

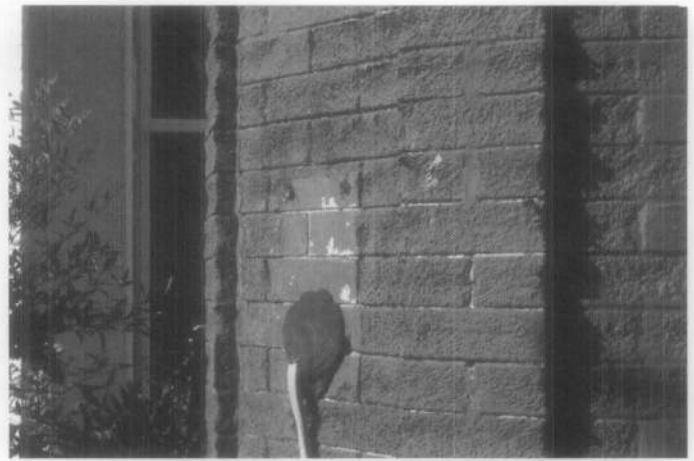


Figure 19. A comparison of undamaged bricks surrounding the electrical conduit with the rest of the brick facade emphasizes the severity of the erosion caused by sandblasting.

Abrasive Blasting. Blasting with abrasive grit or another abrasive material is the most frequently used abrasive method. *Sandblasting* is most commonly associated with abrasive cleaning. Finely ground silica or glass powder, glass beads, ground garnet, powdered walnut and other ground nut shells, grain hulls, aluminum oxide, plastic particles and even tiny pieces of sponge, are just a few of the other materials that have also been used for abrasive cleaning. Although abrasive blasting is not an appropriate method of cleaning historic masonry, it can be safely used to clean some materials. Finely-powdered walnut shells are commonly used for cleaning monumental bronze sculpture, and skilled conservators clean delicate museum objects and finely detailed, carved stone features with very small, micro-abrasive units using aluminum oxide.

A number of current approaches to abrasive blasting rely on materials that are not usually thought of as abrasive, and not as commonly associated with traditional abrasive grit cleaning. Some patented abrasive cleaning processes—one dry, one wet—use finely-ground glass powder intended to “erase” or remove dirt and surface soiling only, but not paint or stains (Fig. 20). Cleaning with baking soda (sodium bicarbonate) is another patented process. Baking soda blasting is being used in some communities as a means of quick graffiti removal. However, it should not be used on historic masonry which it can easily abrade and can permanently “etch” the graffiti into the stone; it can also leave potentially damaging salts in the stone which cannot be removed. Most of these abrasive grits may be used either dry or wet, although dry grit tends to be used more frequently.

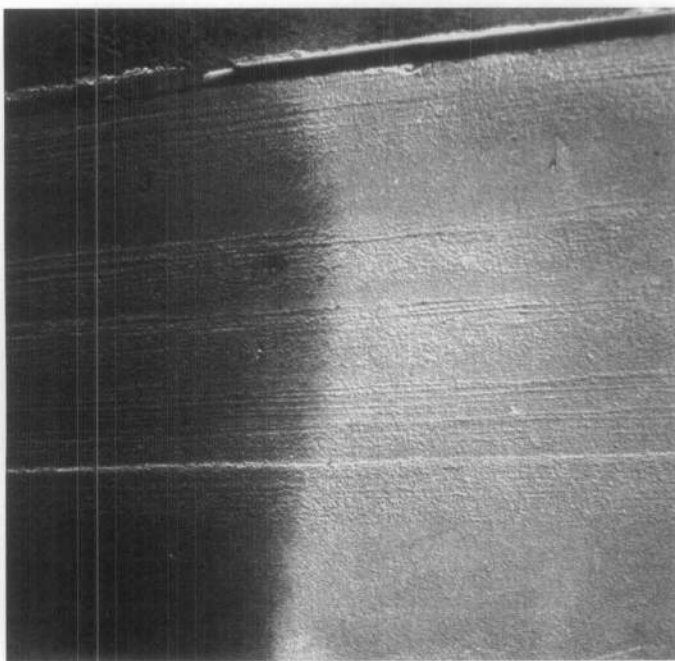


Figure 20. (Left) A comparison of the limestone surface of a 1920s office building before and after “cleaning” with a proprietary abrasive process using fine glass powder clearly shows the effectiveness of this method. But this is an abrasive technique and it has “cleaned” by removing part of the masonry surface with the dirt. Because it is abrasive, it is generally not recommended for large-scale cleaning of historic masonry, although it may be suitable to use in certain, very limited cases under controlled circumstances. (Right) A vacuum chamber where the used glass powder is collected for environmentally safe disposal is a unique feature of this particular process. The specially-trained operators in the chamber wear protective clothing, masks and breathing equipment. Photos: Tom Keohan.

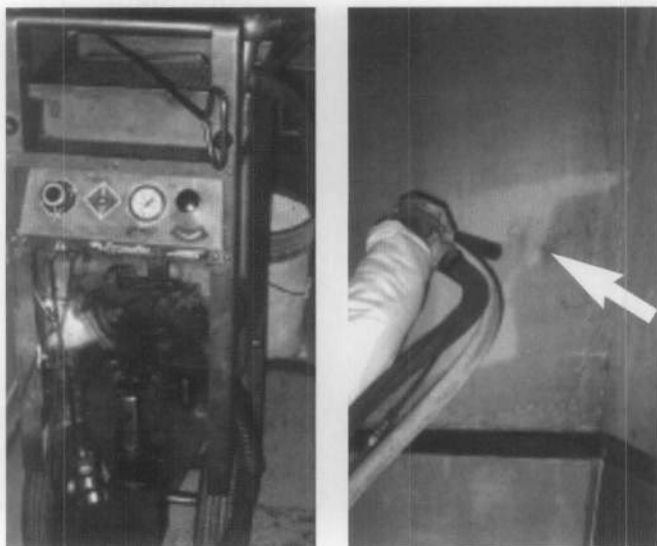


Figure 21. Low-pressure blasting with ice pellets or ice crystals (left) is an abrasive cleaning method that is sometimes recommended for use on interior masonry because it does not involve large amounts of water. However, like other abrasive materials, ice crystals "clean" by removing a portion of the masonry surface with the dirt, and may not remove some stains that have penetrated into the masonry without causing further abrasion (right). Photos: Audrey T. Tepper.

Ice particles, or pelletized dry ice (carbon dioxide or CO₂), are another medium used as an abrasive cleaner (Fig. 21). This is also too abrasive to be used on most historic masonry, but it may have practical application for removing mastics or asphaltic coatings from some substrates.

Some of these processes are promoted as being more environmentally safe and not damaging to historic masonry buildings. However, it must be remembered that they are abrasive and that they "clean" by removing a small portion of the masonry surface, even though it may be only a minuscule portion. The fact that they are essentially abrasive treatments must always be taken into consideration when planning a masonry cleaning project. *In general, abrasive methods should not be used to clean historic masonry buildings.* In some, very limited instances, highly-controlled, gentle abrasive cleaning may be appropriate on selected, hard-to-clean areas of a historic masonry building if carried out under the watchful supervision of a professional conservator. But, abrasive cleaning should never be used on an entire building.

Grinders and Sanding Disks. Grinding the masonry surface with mechanical grinders and sanding disks is another means of abrasive cleaning that should not be used on historic masonry. Like abrasive blasting, grinders and disks do not really clean masonry but instead grind away and abrasively remove and, thus, damage the masonry surface itself rather than remove just the soiling material.

Planning A Cleaning Project

Once the masonry and soiling material or paint have been identified, and the condition of the masonry has been evaluated, planning for the cleaning project can begin.

Testing cleaning methods. In order to determine the *gentlest means possible*, several cleaning methods or materials may have to be tested prior to selecting the best one to use on the building. Testing should always begin with the gentlest and least invasive method proceeding gradually, if necessary, to more complicated methods, or a combination of methods. All too often simple methods, such as low-pressure water wash, are not even considered, yet they frequently are effective, safe, and not expensive. Water of slightly higher pressure or with a non-ionic detergent additive also may be effective. It is worth repeating that these methods should always be tested prior to considering harsher methods; they are safer for the building and the environment, often safer for the applicator, and relatively inexpensive.

The level of cleanliness desired also should be determined prior to selection of a cleaning method. Obviously, the intent of cleaning is to remove most of the dirt, soiling material, stains, paint or other coating. A "brand new" appearance, however, may be inappropriate for an older building, and may require an overly harsh cleaning method to be achieved. When undertaking a cleaning project, it is important to be aware that some stains simply may not be removable. It may be wise, therefore, to agree upon a slightly lower level of cleanliness that will serve as the standard for the cleaning project. The precise amount of residual dirt considered acceptable may depend on the type of masonry, the type of soiling and difficulty of total removal, and local environmental conditions.

Cleaning tests should be carried out in an area of sufficient size to give a true indication of their effectiveness. It is preferable to conduct the test in an inconspicuous location on the building so that it will not be obvious if the test is not successful. A test area may be quite small to begin, sometimes as small as six square inches, and gradually may be increased in size as the most appropriate methods and cleaning agents are determined. Eventually the test area may be expanded to a square yard or more, and it should include several masonry units and mortar joints (Fig. 22). It should be remembered that a single building may have several types of masonry and that even similar materials may have different surface finishes. Each material and different finish should be tested separately. Cleaning tests should be evaluated only after the masonry has dried completely. *The results of the tests may indicate that several methods of cleaning should be used on a single building.*

When feasible, test areas should be allowed to weather for an extended period of time prior to final evaluation. A waiting period of a full year would be ideal in order to expose the test patch to a full range of seasons. If this is not possible, the test patch should weather for at least a month or two. For any building which is considered historically important, the delay is insignificant compared to the potential damage and disfigurement which may result from using an incompletely tested method. *The successfully cleaned test patch should be protected as it will serve as a standard against which the entire cleaning project will be measured.*

Environmental considerations. The potential effect of any method proposed for cleaning historic masonry should be evaluated carefully. Chemical cleaners and paint removers may damage trees, shrubs, grass, and plants. A plan must be provided for environmentally safe removal and disposal of the cleaning materials and the rinsing effluent before beginning the cleaning project. Authorities from the local regulatory agency — usually under the jurisdiction of the federal or state Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) should be consulted prior to beginning a cleaning project, especially if it involves anything more than plain water washing. This advance planning will ensure that the cleaning effluent or run-off, which is the combination of the cleaning agent and the substance removed from the masonry, is handled and disposed of in an environmentally sound and legal manner. Some alkaline and acidic cleaners can be neutralized so that they can be safely discharged into storm sewers. However, most solvent-based cleaners cannot be neutralized and are categorized as pollutants, and must be disposed of by a licensed transport, storage and disposal facility. Thus, it is always advisable to consult with the appropriate agencies before starting to clean to ensure that the project progresses smoothly and is not interrupted by a stop-work order because a required permit was not obtained in advance.

Vinyl guttering or polyethylene-lined troughs placed around the perimeter of the base of the building can serve to catch chemical cleaning waste as it is rinsed off the building. This will reduce the amount of chemicals entering and polluting the soil, and also will keep the cleaning waste contained until it can be removed safely. Some patented cleaning systems have developed special equipment to facilitate the containment and later disposal of cleaning waste.

Concern over the release of volatile organic compounds (VOCs) into the air has resulted in the manufacture of new, more environmentally responsible cleaners and paint removers, while some materials traditionally used in cleaning may no longer be available for these same reasons. Other health and safety concerns have created additional cleaning challenges, such as lead paint removal, which is likely to require special removal and disposal techniques.

Cleaning can also cause damage to non-masonry materials on a building, including glass, metal and wood. Thus, it is usually necessary to cover windows and doors, and other features that may be vulnerable to chemical cleaners. They should be covered with plastic or polyethylene, or a masking agent that is applied as a liquid which dries to form a thin protective film on glass, and is easily peeled off after the cleaning is finished. Wind drift, for example, can also damage other property by carrying cleaning chemicals onto nearby automobiles, resulting in etching of the glass or spotting of the paint finish. Similarly, airborne dust can enter surrounding buildings, and excess water can collect in nearby yards and basements.

Safety considerations. Possible health dangers of each method selected for the cleaning project must be considered before selecting a cleaning method to avoid harm to the

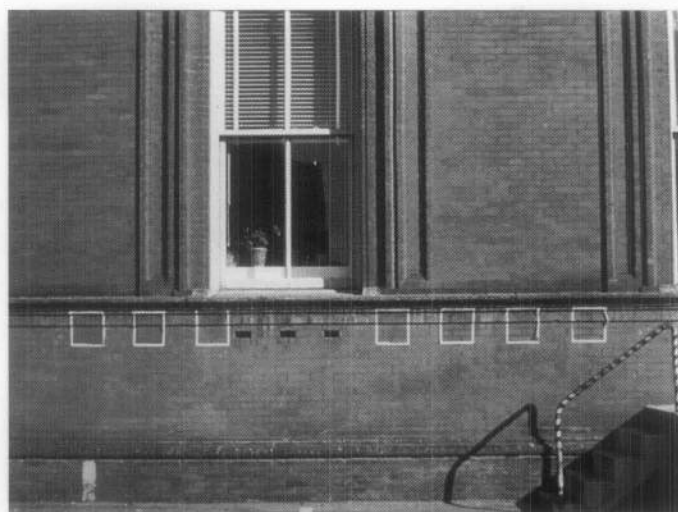


Figure 22. Cleaning test areas may be quite small at first and gradually increase in size as testing determines the "gentlest means possible".
Photo: Frances Gale.

cleaning applicators, and the necessary precautions must be taken. The precautions listed in Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) that are provided with chemical products should always be followed. Protective clothing, respirators, hearing and face shields, and gloves must be provided to workers to be worn at all times. Acidic and alkaline chemical cleaners in both liquid and vapor forms can also cause serious injury to passers-by (Fig. 23). It may be necessary to schedule cleaning at night or weekends if the building is located in a busy urban area to reduce the potential danger of chemical overspray to pedestrians. Cleaning during non-business hours will allow HVAC systems to be turned off and vents to be covered to prevent dangerous chemical fumes from entering the building which will also ensure the safety of the building's occupants. Abrasive and mechanical methods produce dust which can pose a serious health hazard, particularly if the abrasive or the masonry contains silica.

Water-Repellent Coatings and Waterproof Coatings

To begin with, it is important to understand that waterproof coatings and water-repellent coatings are not the same. Although these terms are frequently interchanged and commonly confused with one another, they are completely different materials. **Water-repellent coatings** —often referred to incorrectly as "sealers", but which do not or should not seal— are intended to keep liquid water from penetrating the surface but to allow water vapor to enter and leave, or pass through, the surface of the masonry (Fig. 24). Water-repellent coatings are generally *transparent*, or clear, although once applied some may darken or discolor certain types of masonry while others may give it a glossy or shiny appearance. **Waterproof coatings** seal the surface from liquid water and from water vapor. They are usually *opaque*, or pigmented, and include bituminous coatings and some elastomeric paints and coatings.

Water-Repellent Coatings

Water-repellent coatings are formulated to be vapor permeable, or "breathable". They do not seal the surface completely to water vapor so it can enter the masonry wall as well as leave the wall. While the first water-repellent coatings to be developed were primarily acrylic or silicone resins in organic solvents, now most water-repellent coatings are water-based and formulated from modified siloxanes, silanes and other alkoxysilanes, or metallic stearates. While some of these products are shipped from the factory ready to use, other waterborne water repellents must be diluted at the job site. Unlike earlier water-repellent coatings which tended to form a "film" on the masonry surface, modern water-repellent coatings actually penetrate into the masonry substrate slightly and, generally, are almost invisible if properly applied to the masonry. They are also more vapor permeable than the old coatings, yet they still reduce the vapor permeability of the masonry. Once inside the wall, water vapor can condense at cold spots producing liquid water which, unlike water vapor, cannot escape through a water-repellent coating. The liquid water within the wall, whether from condensation, leaking gutters, or other sources, can cause considerable damage.

Water-repellent coatings are not consolidants. Although modern water repellents may penetrate slightly beneath the masonry surface, instead of just "sitting" on top of it, they do not perform the same function as a consolidant which is to "consolidate" and replace lost binder to strengthen deteriorating masonry. Even after many years of laboratory study and testing few consolidants have proven very effective. The composition of fired products such as brick and architectural terra cotta, as well as many types of building stone, does not lend itself to consolidation.

Some modern water-repellent coatings which contain a binder intended to replace the natural binders in stone that have been lost through weathering and natural erosion are described in product literature as both a water repellent and a consolidant. The fact that newer water-repellent coatings penetrate beneath the masonry surface instead of just forming a layer on top of the surface may indeed convey at least some consolidating properties to certain stones. However, a water-repellent coating cannot be considered a consolidant. In some instances, a water-repellent or "preservative" coating, if applied to already damaged or spalling stone, may form a surface crust which, if it fails, may exacerbate the deterioration by pulling off even more of the stone (Fig. 25).

Is a Water-Repellent Treatment Necessary?

Water-repellent coatings are frequently applied to historic masonry buildings for the wrong reason. They also are often applied without an understanding of what they are and what they are intended to do. And these coatings can be very difficult, if not impossible, to remove from the masonry if they fail or become discolored. Most importantly, the application of water-repellent coatings to historic masonry is usually unnecessary.



Figure 23. A tarpaulin protects and shields pedestrians from potentially harmful spray while chemical cleaning is underway on the granite exterior of the U.S. Treasury Building, Washington, D.C.

Most historic masonry buildings, unless they are painted, have survived for decades without a water-repellent coating and, thus, probably do not need one now. Water penetration to the interior of a masonry building is seldom due to porous masonry, but results from poor or deferred maintenance. Leaking roofs, clogged or deteriorated gutters and downspouts, missing mortar, or cracks and open joints around door and window openings are almost always the cause of moisture-related problems in a historic masonry building. **If historic masonry buildings are kept watertight and in good repair, water-repellent coatings should not be necessary.**

Rising damp (capillary moisture pulled up from the ground), or condensation can also be a source of excess moisture in masonry buildings. A water-repellent coating will not solve this problem either and, in fact, may be likely to exacerbate it. Furthermore, a water-repellent coating should never be applied to a damp wall. Moisture in the wall would reduce the ability of a coating to adhere to the masonry and to penetrate below the surface. But, if it did adhere, it would hold the moisture inside the masonry because, although a water-repellent coating is permeable to water vapor, liquid water cannot pass through it. In the case of rising damp, a coating may force the moisture to go even higher in the wall because it can slow down evaporation, and thereby retain the moisture in the wall.

Excessive moisture in masonry walls may carry waterborne soluble salts from the masonry units themselves or from the mortar through the walls. If the water is permitted to come to the surface, the salts may appear on the masonry surface as efflorescence (a whitish powder) upon evaporation. However, the salts can be potentially dangerous if they remain in the masonry and crystallize



Figure 24. Although the application of a water-repellent coating was probably not needed on either of these buildings, the coating on the brick building (above), is not visible and has not changed the character of the brick. But the coating on the brick column (below), has a high gloss that is incompatible with the historic character of the masonry.



beneath the surface as subflorescence. Subflorescence eventually may cause the surface of the masonry to spall, particularly if a water-repellent coating has been applied which tends to reduce the flow of moisture out from the subsurface of the masonry. Although many of the newer water-repellent products are more breathable than their predecessors, they can be especially damaging if applied to masonry that contains salts, because they limit the flow of moisture through masonry.

When a Water-Repellent Coating May be Appropriate

There are some instances when a water-repellent coating may be considered appropriate to use on a historic masonry building. Soft, incompletely fired brick from the 18th- and early-19th centuries may have become so porous that paint or some type of coating is needed to protect it from further deterioration or dissolution. When a masonry building has been neglected for a long period of time, necessary repairs may be required in order to make it watertight. If, following a reasonable period of time after the building has been made watertight and has dried out completely, moisture appears actually to be penetrating through the repointed and repaired masonry walls, then the application of a water-repellent coating may be considered *in selected areas only*. This decision should be made in consultation with an architectural conservator. And, if such a treatment is undertaken, it should not be applied to the entire exterior of the building.

Anti-graffiti or barrier coatings are another type of clear coating—although barrier coatings can also be pigmented—that may be applied to exterior masonry, but they are not formulated primarily as water repellents. The purpose of these coatings is to make it harder for graffiti to stick to a masonry surface and, thus, easier to clean. But, like water-repellent coatings, in most cases the application of anti-graffiti coatings is generally not recommended for historic masonry buildings. These coatings are often quite shiny which can greatly alter the appearance of a historic masonry surface, and they are not always effective (Fig. 26). Generally, other ways of discouraging graffiti, such as improved lighting, can be more effective than a coating. However, the application of anti-graffiti coatings may be appropriate in some instances on vulnerable areas of historic masonry buildings which are frequent targets of graffiti that are located in out-of-the-way places where constant surveillance is not possible.

Some water-repellent coatings are recommended by product manufacturers as a means of keeping dirt and pollutants or biological growth from collecting on the surface of masonry buildings and, thus, reducing the need for frequent cleaning. While this at times may be true, in some cases a coating may actually retain dirt more than uncoated masonry. Generally, the application of a water-repellent coating is not recommended on a historic masonry building as a means of preventing biological growth. Some water-repellent coatings may actually encourage biological growth on a masonry wall. Biological growth on masonry buildings has traditionally been kept at bay through regularly-scheduled cleaning as part of a maintenance plan. Simple cleaning of the masonry with low-pressure water using a natural- or synthetic-bristled scrub brush can be very effective if done on a regular basis. Commercial products are also available which can be sprayed on masonry to remove biological growth.

In most instances, a water-repellent coating is not necessary if a building is watertight. The application of a water-repellent coating is not a recommended treatment for historic masonry buildings unless there is a specific



Figure 25. The clear coating applied to this limestone molding has failed and is taking off some of the stone surface as it peels. Photo: Frances Gale.

problem which it may help solve. If the problem occurs on only part of the building, it is best to treat only that area rather than an entire building. Extreme exposures such as parapets, for example, or portions of the building subject to driving rain can be treated more effectively and less expensively than the entire building. Water-repellent coatings are not permanent and must be reapplied

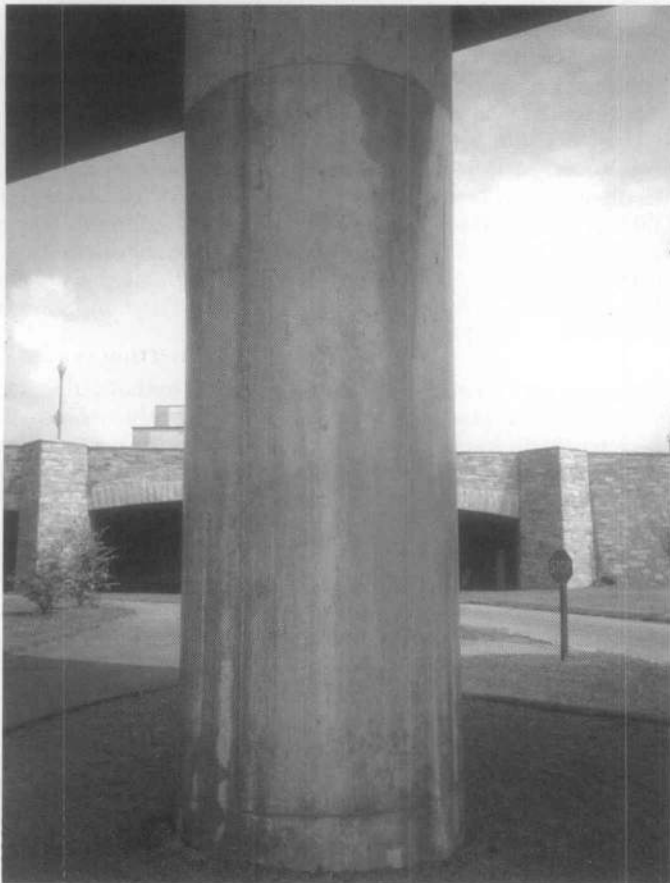


Figure 26. The anti-graffiti or barrier coating on this column is very shiny and would not be appropriate to use on a historic masonry building. The coating has discolored as it has aged and whitish streaks reveal areas of bare concrete where the coating was incompletely applied.

periodically although, if they are truly invisible, it can be difficult to know when they are no longer providing the intended protection.

Testing a water-repellent coating by applying it in one small area may not be helpful in determining its suitability for the building because a limited test area does not allow an adequate evaluation of such a treatment. Since water may enter and leave through the surrounding untreated areas, there is no way to tell if the coated test area is "breathable." But trying a coating in a small area may help to determine whether the coating is visible on the surface or if it will otherwise change the appearance of the masonry.

Waterproof Coatings

In theory, waterproof coatings usually do not cause problems as long as they exclude all water from the masonry. If water does enter the wall from the ground or from the inside of a building, the coating can intensify the damage because the water will not be able to escape. During cold weather this water in the wall can freeze causing serious mechanical disruption, such as spalling.

In addition, the water eventually will get out by the path of least resistance. If this path is toward the interior, damage to interior finishes can result; if it is toward the exterior, it can lead to damage to the masonry caused by built-up water pressure (Fig. 27).

In most instances, waterproof coatings should not be applied to historic masonry. The possible exception to this might be the application of a waterproof coating to below-grade exterior foundation walls as a last resort to stop water infiltration on interior basement walls. **Generally, however, waterproof coatings, which include elastomeric paints, should almost never be applied above grade to historic masonry buildings.**



Figure 27. Instead of correcting the roof drainage problems, an elastomeric coating was applied to the already saturated limestone cornice. An elastomeric coating holds moisture in the masonry because it does not "breathe" and does not allow liquid moisture to escape. If the water pressure builds up sufficiently it can cause the coating to break and pop off as shown in this example, often pulling pieces of the masonry with it. Photo: National Park Service Files.

Summary

A well-planned cleaning project is an essential step in preserving, rehabilitating or restoring a historic masonry building. Proper cleaning methods and coating treatments, when determined necessary for the preservation of the masonry, can enhance the aesthetic character as well as the structural stability of a historic building. Removing years of accumulated dirt, pollutant crusts, stains, graffiti or paint, if done with appropriate caution, can extend the life and longevity of the historic resource. Cleaning that is carelessly or insensitively prescribed or carried out by inexperienced workers can have the opposite of the intended effect. It may scar the masonry permanently, and may actually result in hastening deterioration by introducing harmful residual chemicals and salts into the masonry or causing surface loss. Using the wrong cleaning method or using the right method incorrectly, applying the wrong kind of coating or applying a coating that is not needed can result in serious damage, both physically and aesthetically, to a historic masonry building. Cleaning a historic masonry building should always be done using the *gentlest means possible* that will clean, but not damage the building. It should always be taken into consideration before applying a water-repellent coating or a waterproof coating to a historic masonry building whether it is really necessary and whether it is in the best interest of preserving the building.

Selected Reading

Architectural Ceramics: Their History, Manufacture and Conservation. A Joint Symposium of English Heritage and the United Kingdom Institute for Conservation, September 22-25, 1994. London: English Heritage, 1996.

Ashurst, Nicola. *Cleaning Historic Buildings. Volume One: Substrates, Soiling & Investigation. Volume Two: Cleaning Materials & Processes*. London: Donhead Publishing Ltd., 1994.

Association for Preservation Technology. *Special Issue: Preservation of Historic Masonry*. Papers from the Symposium on Preservation Treatments for Historic Masonry: Consolidants, Coatings, and Water Repellents, New York, New York, November 11-12, 1994. *APT Bulletin*. Vol. XXVI, No. 4 (1995).

Grimmer, Anne E. *Preservation Brief 6: Dangers of Abrasive Cleaning to Historic Buildings*. Washington, D.C.: Preservation Assistance Division, National Park Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, 1979.

Grimmer, Anne E. *Keeping it Clean: Removing Exterior Dirt, Paint, Stains and Graffiti from Historic Masonry Buildings*. Washington, D.C.: Preservation Assistance Division, National Park Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, 1988.

Park, Sharon C., AIA. *Preservation Brief 39: Holding the Line: Controlling Unwanted Moisture in Historic Buildings*. Washington, D.C.: Heritage Preservation Services, National Park Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, 1996.

Powers, Robert M. *Preservation Tech Note, Masonry No. 3, "Water Soak Cleaning of Limestone"*. Washington, D.C.: Preservation Assistance Division, National Park Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, 1992.

Sinvinski, Valerie. "Gentle Blasting." *Old-House Journal*. Vol. XXIV, No. 4 (July-August 1996), pp. 46-49.

Weaver, Martin E. *Conserving Buildings: A Guide to Techniques and Materials*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1993.

Weaver, Martin E. *Preservation Brief 38: Removing Graffiti from Historic Masonry*. Washington, D.C.: Preservation Assistance Division, National Park Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, 1995.

Winkler, E.M. *Stone in Architecture: Properties, Durability*. Third, completely revised and extended edition. Berlin, Germany: Springer-Verlag, 1997.

Acknowledgments

Robert C. Mack, FAIA, is a principal in the firm of MacDonald & Mack Architects, Ltd., an architectural firm that specializes in historic buildings in Minneapolis, Minnesota.

Anne Grimmer is a Senior Architectural Historian in the Technical Preservation Services Branch, Heritage Preservation Services Program, National Park Service, Washington, D.C.

The original version of *Preservation Brief 1: The Cleaning and Waterproof Coating of Masonry Buildings* was written by Robert C. Mack, AIA. It inaugurated the *Preservation Briefs* series when it was published in 1975.

The following historic preservation specialists provided technical review of this publication: Frances Gale, Training Director, National Center for Preservation Technology and Training, National Park Service, Natchitoches, LA; Judith M. Jacob, Architectural Conservator, Building Conservation Branch, Northeast Cultural Resources Center, National Park Service, N.Y., NY; Robert M. Powers, Architectural Conservator, Powers and Company, Inc., Philadelphia, PA; Antonio Aguilar, Kaaren Dodge, JoEllen Hensley, Gary Sachau, John Sandor and Audrey T. Tepper, Technical Preservation Services Branch, Heritage Preservation Services Program, National Park Service, Washington, D.C.; and Kay D. Weeks, Heritage Preservation Services Program, National Park Service, Washington, D.C.

This publication has been prepared pursuant to the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966, as amended, which directs the Secretary of the Interior to develop and make available information concerning historic properties. Comments on the usefulness of this publication may be directed to: Sharon C. Park, FAIA, Chief, Technical Preservation Services Branch, Heritage Preservation Services Program, National Park Service, 1849 C Street, N.W., Suite NC200, Washington, D.C. 20240 (www2.cr.nps.gov/tps). This publication is not copyrighted and can be reproduced without penalty. Normal procedures for credit to the authors and the National Park Service are appreciated.

Front Cover: Chemical cleaning of the brick and architectural terra cotta frieze on the 1880s Pension Building, Washington, D.C. (now the National Building Museum), is shown here in progress. Photo: Christina Henry.

Photographs used to illustrate this Brief were taken by Anne Grimmer unless otherwise credited.

ISSN:0885-7016

November 2000

6 PRESERVATION BRIEFS

Dangers of Abrasive Cleaning to Historic Buildings

Anne E. Grimmer



U.S. Department of the Interior
National Park Service
Cultural Resources

Heritage Preservation Services

"The surface cleaning of structures shall be undertaken with the gentlest means possible. Sandblasting and other cleaning methods that will damage the historic building materials shall not be undertaken."—The Secretary of the Interior's "Standards for Historic Preservation Projects."

Abrasive cleaning methods are responsible for causing a great deal of damage to historic building materials. To prevent indiscriminate use of these potentially harmful techniques, this brief has been prepared to explain abrasive cleaning methods, how they can be physically and aesthetically destructive to historic building materials, and why they generally are not acceptable preservation treatments for historic structures. There are alternative, less harsh means of cleaning and removing paint and stains from historic buildings. However, careful testing should precede general cleaning to assure that the method selected will not have an adverse effect on the building materials. A historic building is irreplaceable, and should be cleaned using only the "gentlest means possible" to best preserve it.

What is Abrasive Cleaning?

Abrasive cleaning methods include all techniques that physically abrade the building surface to remove soils, discolorations or coatings. Such techniques involve the use of certain *materials* which impact or abrade the surface under pressure, or abrasive *tools and equipment*. Sand, because it is readily available, is probably the most commonly used type of grit material. However, any of the following materials may be substituted for sand, and all can be classified as abrasive substances: ground slag or volcanic ash, crushed (pulverized) walnut or almond shells, rice husks, ground corn cobs, ground coconut shells, crushed eggshells, silica flour, synthetic particles, glass beads and micro-balloons. Even *water* under pressure can be an abrasive substance. Tools and equipment that are abrasive to historic building materials include wire

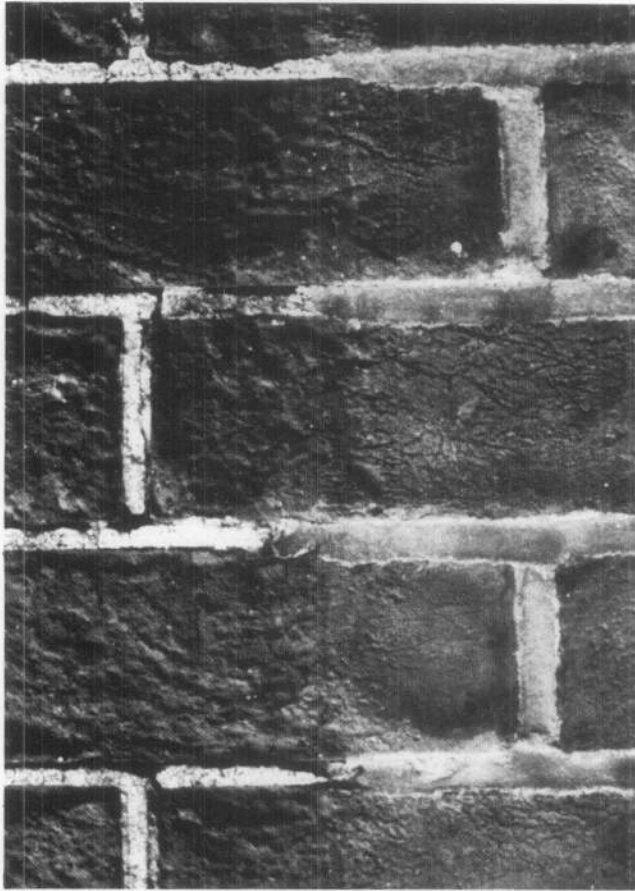
brushes, rotary wheels, power sanding disks and belt sanders.

The use of water in combination with grit may also be classified as an abrasive cleaning method. Depending on the manner in which it is applied, water *may* soften the impact of the grit, but water that is too highly pressurized can be very abrasive. There are basically two different methods which can be referred to as "wet grit," and it is important to differentiate between the two. One technique involves the addition of a stream of water to a regular sandblasting nozzle. This is done primarily to cut down dust, and has very little, if any, effect on reducing the aggressiveness, or cutting action of the grit particles. With the second technique, a very small amount of grit is added to a pressurized water stream. This method may be controlled by regulating the amount of grit fed into the water stream, as well as the pressure of the water.

Why Are Abrasive Cleaning Methods Used?

Usually, an abrasive cleaning method is selected as an expeditious means of quickly removing years of dirt accumulation, unsightly stains, or deteriorating building fabric or finishes, such as stucco or paint. The fact that sandblasting is one of the best known and most readily available building cleaning treatments is probably the major reason for its frequent use.

Many mid-19th century brick buildings were painted immediately or soon after completion to protect poor quality brick or to imitate another material, such as stone. Sometimes brick buildings were painted in an effort to produce what was considered a more harmonious relationship between a building and its natural surroundings. By the 1870s, brick buildings

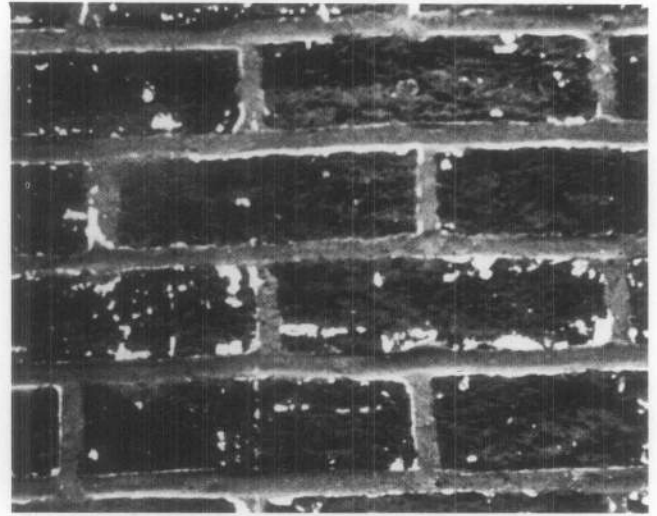


Abrasively Cleaned vs. Untouched Brick. Two brick rowhouses with a common façade provide an excellent point of comparison when only one of the houses has been sandblasted. It is clear that abrasive blasting, by removing the outer surface, has left the brickwork on the left rough and pitted, while that on the right still exhibits an undamaged and relatively smooth surface. Note that the abrasive cleaning has also removed a considerable portion of the mortar from the joints of the brick on the left side, which will require repointing.

were often left unpainted as mechanization in the brick industry brought a cheaper pressed brick and fashion decreed a sudden preference for dark colors. However, it was still customary to paint brick of poorer quality for the additional protection the paint afforded.

It is a common 20th-century misconception that all historic masonry buildings were initially unpainted. If the intent of a modern restoration is to return a building to its original appearance, removal of the paint not only may be historically inaccurate, but also harmful. Many older buildings were painted or stuccoed at some point to correct recurring maintenance problems caused by faulty construction techniques, to hide alterations, or in an attempt to solve moisture problems. If this is the case, removal of paint or stucco may cause these problems to reoccur.

Another reason for paint removal, particularly in rehabilitation projects, is to give the building a "new image" in response to contemporary design trends and to attract investors or tenants. Thus, it is necessary to consider the purpose of the intended cleaning. While it is clearly important to remove unsightly stains, heavy encrustations of dirt, peeling paint or other surface coatings, it may not be equally desirable to remove paint from a building which originally was painted. Many historic buildings which show only a slight amount of soil or discoloration are much better left as they are. A thin layer of soil is more often protective of the building fabric than it is harmful, and seldom detracts from the building's



Abrading the Surface without Removing the Paint. Even though the entire outer surface layer of the brick has been sandblasted off, spots of paint still cling to the masonry. Sandblasting or other similarly abrasive methods are not always a successful means of removing paint.

architectural and/or historic character. Too thorough cleaning of a historic building may not only sacrifice some of the building's character, but also, misguided cleaning efforts can cause a great deal of damage to historic building fabric. Unless there are stains, graffiti or dirt and pollution deposits which are destroying the building fabric, it is generally preferable to do as little cleaning as possible, or to repaint where necessary. It is important to remember that a historic building does not have to look as if it were newly constructed to be an attractive or successful restoration or rehabilitation project. For a more thorough explanation of the philosophy of cleaning historic buildings see Preservation Briefs: No. 1 "The Cleaning and Waterproof Coating of Masonry Buildings," by Robert C. Mack, AIA.

Problems of Abrasive Cleaning

The crux of the problem is that abrasive cleaning is just that—abrasive. An abrasively cleaned historic structure may be physically as well as aesthetically damaged. Abrasive methods "clean" by eroding dirt or paint, but at the same time they also tend to erode the surface of the building material. In this way, abrasive cleaning is destructive and causes irreversible harm to the historic building fabric. If the fabric is brick, abrasive methods remove the hard, outer protective surface, and therefore make the brick more susceptible to rapid weathering and deterioration. Grit blasting may also increase the water permeability of a brick wall. The impact of the grit particles tends to erode the bond between the mortar and the brick, leaving cracks or enlarging existing cracks where water can enter. Some types of stone develop a protective patina or "quarry crust" parallel to the worked surface (created by the movement of moisture towards the outer edge), which also may be damaged by abrasive cleaning. The rate at which the material subsequently weathers depends on the quality of the inner surface that is exposed.

Abrasive cleaning can destroy, or substantially diminish, decorative detailing on buildings such as a molded brickwork or architectural terra-cotta, ornamental carving on wood or stone, and evidence of historic craft techniques, such as tool marks and other surface textures. In addition, perfectly sound and/or "tooled" mortar joints can be worn away by abrasive techniques. This not only results in the loss of historic craft detailing but also requires repointing, a step involving con-

siderable time, skill and expense, and which might not have been necessary had a gentler method been chosen. Erosion and pitting of the building material by abrasive cleaning creates a greater surface area on which dirt and pollutants collect. In this sense, the building fabric "attracts" more dirt, and will require more frequent cleaning in the future.

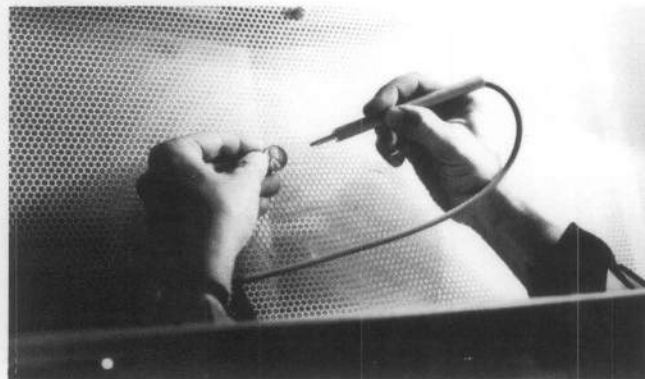
In addition to causing physical and aesthetic harm to the historic fabric, there are several adverse environmental effects of dry abrasive cleaning methods. Because of the friction caused by the abrasive medium hitting the building fabric, these techniques usually create a considerable amount of dust, which is unhealthy, particularly to the operators of the abrasive equipment. It further pollutes the environment around the job site, and deposits dust on neighboring buildings, parked vehicles and nearby trees and shrubbery. Some adjacent materials not intended for abrasive treatment such as wood or glass, may also be damaged because the equipment may be difficult to regulate.

Wet grit methods, while eliminating dust, deposit a messy slurry on the ground or other objects surrounding the base of the building. In colder climates where there is the threat of frost, any wet cleaning process applied to historic masonry structures must be done in warm weather, allowing ample time for the wall to dry out thoroughly before cold weather sets in. Water which remains and freezes in cracks and openings of the masonry surface eventually may lead to spalling. High-pressure wet cleaning may force an inordinate amount of water into the walls, affecting interior materials such as plaster or joist ends, as well as metal building components within the walls.

Variable Factors

The greatest problem in developing practical guidelines for cleaning any historic building is the large number of variable and unpredictable factors involved. Because these variables make each cleaning project unique, it is difficult to establish specific standards at this time. This is particularly true of abrasive cleaning methods because their inherent potential for causing damage is multiplied by the following factors:

- the type and condition of the material being cleaned;
- the size and sharpness of the grit particles or the mechanical equipment;
- the pressure with which the abrasive grit or equipment is applied to the building surface;
- the skill and care of the operator; and
- the constancy of the pressure on all surfaces during the cleaning process.



Micro-Abrasive Cleaning. This small, pencil-sized micro-abrasive unit is used by some museum conservators to clean small objects. This particular micro-abrasive unit is operated within the confines of a box (approximately 2 cubic feet of space), but a similar and slightly larger unit may be used for cleaning larger pieces of sculpture, or areas of architectural detailing on a building. Even a pressure cleaning unit this small is capable of eroding a surface, and must be carefully controlled.



"Line Drop." Even though the operator of the sandblasting equipment is standing on a ladder to reach the higher sections of the wall, it is still almost impossible to have total control over the pressure. The pressure of the sand hitting the lower portion of the wall will still be greater than that above, because of the "line drop" in the distance from the pressure source to the nozzle. (Hugh Miller)

Pressure: The damaging effects of most of the variable factors involved in abrasive cleaning are self evident. However, the matter of pressure requires further explanation. In cleaning specifications, pressure is generally abbreviated as "psi" (pounds per square inch), which technically refers to the "tip" pressure, or the amount of pressure at the nozzle of the blasting apparatus. Sometimes "psig," or pressure at the gauge (which may be many feet away, at the other end of the hose), is used in place of "psi." These terms are often incorrectly used interchangeably.

Despite the apparent care taken by most architects and building cleaning contractors to prepare specifications for pressure cleaning which will not cause harm to the delicate fabric of a historic building, it is very difficult to ensure that the same amount of pressure is applied to all parts of the building. For example, if the operator of the pressure equipment stands on the ground while cleaning a two-story structure, the amount of force reaching the first story will be greater than that hitting the second story, even if the operator stands on scaffolding or in a cherry picker, because of the "line drop" in the distance from the pressure source to the nozzle. Although technically it may be possible to prepare cleaning specifications with tight controls that would eliminate all but a small margin of error, it may not be easy to find professional cleaning firms willing to work under such restrictive conditions. The fact is that many professional building cleaning firms do not really understand the extreme delicacy of historic building fabric, and how it differs from modern construction materials. Consequently, they may ac-

cept building cleaning projects for which they have no experience.

The amount of pressure used in any kind of cleaning treatment which involves pressure, whether it is dry or wet grit, chemicals or just plain water, is crucial to the outcome of the cleaning project. Unfortunately, no standards have been established for determining the correct pressure for cleaning each of the many historic building materials which would not cause harm. The considerable discrepancy between the way the building cleaning industry and architectural conservators define "high" and "low" pressure cleaning plays a significant role in the difficulty of creating standards.

Nonhistoric/Industrial: A representative of the building cleaning industry might consider "high" pressure water cleaning to be anything over 5,000 psi, or even as high as 10,000 to 15,000 psi! Water under this much pressure may be necessary to clean industrial structures or machinery, but would destroy most historic building materials. Industrial chemical cleaning commonly utilizes pressures between 1,000 and 2,500 psi.



Spalling Brick. This soft, early 19th-century brick was sandblasted in the 1960s; consequently, severe spalling has resulted. Some bricks have almost totally disintegrated, and will eventually have to be replaced. (Robert S. Gamble)

Historic: By contrast, conscientious dry or wet abrasive cleaning of a historic structure would be conducted within the range of 20 to 100 psi at a range of 3 to 12 inches. Cleaning at this low pressure requires the use of a very fine 00 or 0 mesh grit forced through a nozzle with a $\frac{1}{4}$ inch opening. A similar, even more delicate method being adopted by architectural conservators uses a micro-abrasive grit on small, hard-to-clean areas of carved, cut or molded ornament on a building façade. Originally developed by museum conservators for cleaning sculpture, this technique may employ glass beads, micro-balloons, or another type of micro-abrasive gently powered at approximately 40 psi by a very small, almost pencil-like pressure instrument. Although a slightly larger pressure instrument may be used on historic buildings, this technique still has limited practical applicability on a large scale building cleaning project because of the cost and the relatively few technicians competent to handle the task. In general, architectural conservators have determined that only through very controlled conditions can most historic building material be abrasively cleaned of soil or paint without measurable damage to the surface or profile of the substrate.

Yet some professional cleaning companies which specialize in cleaning historic masonry buildings use chemicals and water at a pressure of approximately 1,500 psi, while other cleaning firms recommend lower pressures ranging from 200 to 800 psi for a similar project. An architectural conservator might decide, *after testing*, that some historic structures could be cleaned properly using a moderate pressure (200–600 psi), or even a high pressure (600–1800 psi) water rinse. However,

cleaning historic buildings under such high pressure should be considered an exception rather than the rule, and would require *very careful* testing and supervision to assure that the historic surface materials could withstand the pressure without gouging, pitting or loosening.

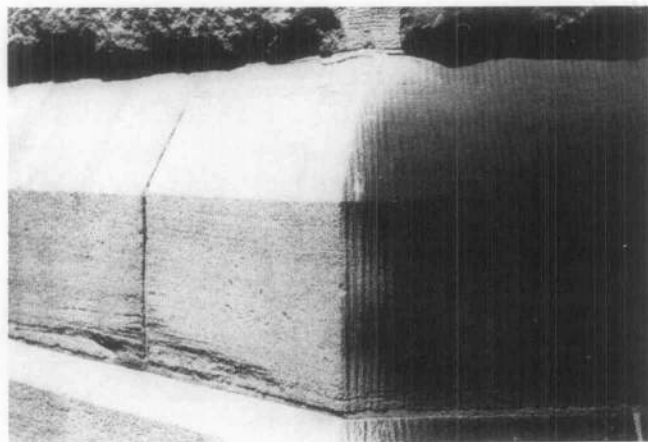
These differences in the amount of pressure used by commercial or industrial building cleaners and architectural conservators point to one of the main problems in using abrasive means to clean historic buildings: misunderstanding of the potentially fragile nature of historic building materials. There is no one cleaning formula or pressure suitable for all situations. Decisions regarding the proper cleaning process for historic structures can be made only after careful analysis of the building fabric, and testing.

How Building Materials React to Abrasive Cleaning Methods

Brick and Architectural Terra-Cotta: Abrasive blasting does not affect all building materials to the same degree. Such techniques quite logically cause greater damage to softer and more porous materials, such as brick or architectural terra-cotta. When these materials are cleaned abrasively, the hard, outer layer (closest to the heat of the kiln) is eroded, leaving the soft, inner core exposed and susceptible to accelerated weathering. Glazed architectural terra-cotta and ceramic veneer have a baked-on glaze which is also easily damaged by abrasive cleaning. Glazed architectural terra-cotta was designed for easy maintenance, and generally can be cleaned using detergent and water; but chemicals or steam may be needed to remove more persistent stains. Large areas of brick or architectural terra-cotta which have been painted are best left painted, or repainted if necessary.

Plaster and Stucco: Plaster and stucco are types of masonry finish materials that are softer than brick or terra-cotta; if treated abrasively these materials will simply disintegrate. Indeed, when plaster or stucco is treated abrasively it is usually with the intention of removing the plaster or stucco from whatever base material or substrate it is covering. Obviously, such abrasive techniques should not be applied to clean sound plaster or stuccoed walls, or decorative plaster wall surfaces.

Building Stones: Building stones are cut from the three main categories of natural rock: dense, igneous rock such as granite; sandy, sedimentary rock such as limestone or sandstone; and crystalline, metamorphic rock such as marble. As op-



Abrasive Cleaning of Tooled Granite. Even this carefully controlled "wet grit" blasting has erased vertical tooling marks in the cut granite blocks on the left. Not only has the tooling been destroyed, but the damaged stone surface is now more susceptible to accelerated weathering.

posed to kiln-dried masonry materials such as brick and architectural terra-cotta, building stones are generally homogeneous in character at the time of a building's construction. However, as the stone is exposed to weathering and environmental pollutants, the surface may become friable, or may develop a protective skin or patina. These outer surfaces are very susceptible to damage by abrasive or improper chemical cleaning.

Building stones are frequently cut into ashlar blocks or "dressed" with tool marks that give the building surface a specific texture and contribute to its historic character as much as ornately carved decorative stonework. Such detailing is easily damaged by abrasive cleaning techniques; the pattern of tooling or cutting is erased, and the crisp lines of moldings or carving are worn or pitted.

Occasionally, it may be possible to clean small areas of rough-cut granite, limestone or sandstone having a heavy dirt encrustation by using the "wet grit" method, whereby a small amount of abrasive material is injected into a controlled, pressurized water stream. However, this technique requires very careful supervision in order to prevent damage to the stone. Polished or honed marble or granite should *never* be treated abrasively, as the abrasion would remove the finish in much the way glass would be etched or "frosted" by such a process. It is generally preferable to underclean, as too strong a cleaning procedure will erode the stone, exposing a new and increased surface area to collect atmospheric moisture and dirt. Removing paint, stains or graffiti from most types of stone may be accomplished by a chemical treatment carefully selected to best handle the removal of the particular type of paint or stain without damaging the stone. (See section on the "Gentlest Means Possible")



Abrasive Cleaning of Wood. This wooden windowsill, molding and paneling have been sandblasted to remove layers of paint in the rehabilitation of this commercial building. Not only is some paint still embedded in cracks and crevices of the woodwork, but more importantly, grit blasting has actually eroded the summer wood, in effect raising the grain, and resulting in a rough surface.

Wood: Most types of wood used for buildings are soft, fibrous and porous, and are particularly susceptible to damage by abrasive cleaning. Because the summer wood between the lines of the grain is softer than the grain itself, it will be worn away by abrasive blasting or power tools, leaving an uneven surface with the grain raised and often frayed or "fuzzy." Once this has occurred, it is almost impossible to achieve a smooth surface again except by extensive hand sanding, which is expensive and will quickly negate any costs saved earlier by sandblasting. Such harsh cleaning treatment also obliterates historic tool marks, fine carving and detailing, which precludes its use on any interior or exterior woodwork which has been hand planed, milled or carved.

Metals: Like stone, metals are another group of building materials which vary considerably in hardness and durability. Softer metals which are used architecturally, such as tin, zinc, lead, copper or aluminum, generally should not be cleaned abrasively as the process deforms and destroys the original surface texture and appearance, as well as the acquired patina. Much applied architectural metal work used on historic buildings—tin, zinc, lead and copper—is often quite thin and soft, and therefore susceptible to denting and pitting. Galvanized sheet metal is especially vulnerable, as abrasive treatment would wear away the protective galvanized layer.

In the late 19th and early 20th centuries, these metals were often cut, pressed or otherwise shaped from sheets of metal into a wide variety of practical uses such as roofs, gutters and flashing, and façade ornamentation such as cornices, friezes, dormers, panels, cupolas, oriel windows, etc. The architecture of the 1920s and 1930s made use of metals such as chrome, nickel alloys, aluminum and stainless steel in decorative exterior panels, window frames, and doorways. Harsh abrasive blasting would destroy the original surface finish of most of these metals, and would increase the possibility of corrosion.

However, conservation specialists are now employing a sensitive technique of glass bead peening to clean some of the harder metals, in particular large bronze outdoor sculpture. Very fine (75–125 micron) glass beads are used at a low pressure of 60 to 80 psi. Because these glass beads are completely spherical, there are no sharp edges to cut the surface of the metal. After cleaning, these statues undergo a lengthy process of polishing. Coatings are applied which protect the surface from corrosion, but they must be renewed every 3 to 5 years. A similarly delicate cleaning technique employing glass beads has been used in Europe to clean historic masonry structures without causing damage. But at this time the process has not been tested sufficiently in the United States to recommend it as a building conservation measure.

Sometimes a very fine *smooth* sand is used at a low pressure to clean or remove paint and corrosion from copper flashing and other metal building components. Restoration architects recently found that a mixture of crushed walnut shells and copper slag at a pressure of approximately 200 psi was the only way to remove corrosion successfully from a mid-19th century terne-coated iron roof. Metal cleaned in this manner must be painted immediately to prevent rapid recurrence of corrosion. It is thought that these methods "work harden" the surface by compressing the outer layer, and actually may be good for the surface of the metal. But the extremely complex nature and the time required by such processes make it very expensive and impractical for large-scale use at this time.

Cast and wrought iron architectural elements may be gently sandblasted or abrasively cleaned using a wire brush to remove layers of paint, rust and corrosion. Sandblasting was, in fact, developed originally as an efficient maintenance procedure for engineering and industrial structures and heavy machinery—iron and steel bridges, machine tool frames, engine frames, and railroad rolling stock—in order to clean and prepare them for repainting. Because iron is hard, its surface,

which is naturally somewhat uneven, will not be noticeably damaged by controlled abrasion. Such treatment will, however, result in a small amount of pitting. But this slight abrasion creates a good surface for paint, since the iron must be repainted immediately to prevent corrosion. Any abrasive cleaning of metal building components will also remove the caulking from joints and around other openings. Such areas must be recaulked quickly to prevent moisture from entering and rusting the metal, or causing deterioration of other building fabric inside the structure.

When is Abrasive Cleaning Permissible?

For the most part, abrasive cleaning is destructive to historic building materials. A limited number of special cases have been explained when it may be appropriate, if supervised by a skilled conservator, to use a delicate abrasive technique on some historic building materials. The type of "wet grit" cleaning which involves a small amount of grit injected into a stream of low pressure water may be used on small areas of stone masonry (i.e., rough cut limestone, sandstone or unpolished granite), where milder cleaning methods have not been totally successful in removing harmful deposits of dirt and pollutants. Such areas may include stone window sills, the tops of cornices or column capitals, or other detailed areas of the façade.

This is still an abrasive technique, and without proper caution in handling, it can be *just as harmful to the building surface as any other abrasive cleaning method*. Thus, the decision to use this type of "wet grit" process should be made only after consultation with an experienced building conservator. Remember that *it is very time consuming and expensive to use any abrasive technique on a historic building in such a manner that it does not cause harm to the often fragile and friable building materials*.

At this time, and only under certain circumstances, abrasive cleaning methods may be used in the rehabilitation of interior spaces of warehouse or industrial buildings for contemporary uses.

Interior spaces of factories or warehouse structures in which the masonry or plaster surfaces do not have significant design, detailing, tooling or finish, and in which wooden architectural features are not finished, molded, beaded or worked by hand, may be cleaned abrasively in order to remove layers of paint and industrial discolorations such as smoke, soot, etc. It is expected after such treatment that brick surfaces will be rough and pitted, and wood will be somewhat frayed or "fuzzy"



Permissible Abrasive Cleaning. In accordance with the Secretary of the Interior's Guidelines for Rehabilitation Projects, it may be acceptable to use abrasive techniques to clean an industrial interior space such as that illustrated here, because the masonry surfaces do not have significant design, detailing, tooling or finish, and the wooden architectural features are not finished, molded, beaded or worked by hand.

with raised wood grain. These nonsignificant surfaces will be damaged and have a roughened texture, but because they are interior elements, they will not be subject to further deterioration caused by weathering.

Historic Interiors that Should Not Be Cleaned Abrasively

Those instances (generally industrial and some commercial properties), when it may be acceptable to use an abrasive treatment on the interior of historic structures have been described. But for the majority of historic buildings, the Secretary of the Interior's *Guidelines for Rehabilitation* do not recommend "changing the texture of exposed wooden architectural features (including structural members) and masonry surfaces through sandblasting or use of other abrasive techniques to remove paint, discolorations and plaster. . . ."

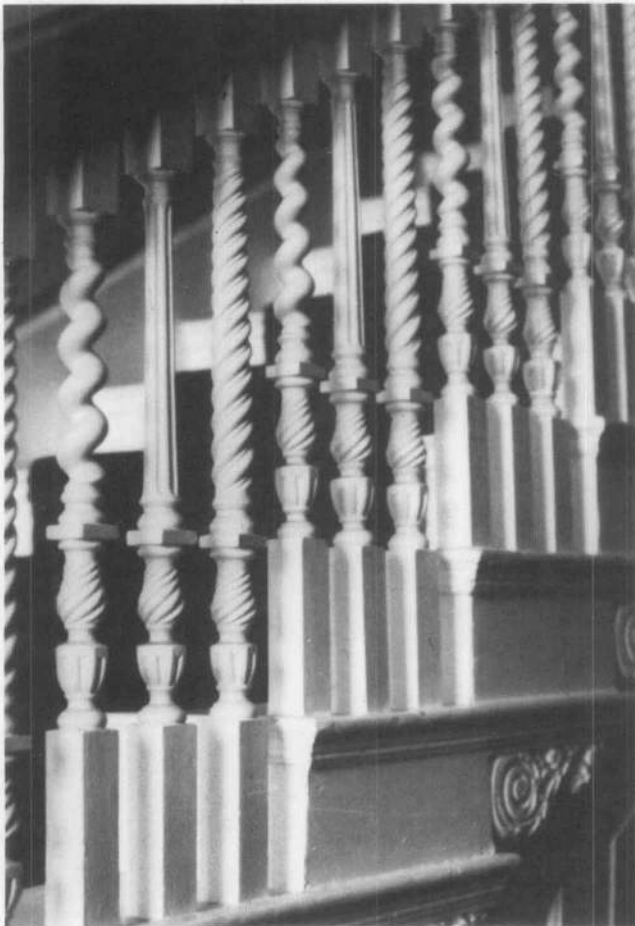
Thus, it is not acceptable to clean abrasively interiors of historic residential and commercial properties which have *finished* interior spaces featuring milled woodwork such as doors, window and door moldings, wainscoting, stair balustrades and mantelpieces. Even the most modest historic *house* interior, although it may not feature elaborate detailing, contains plaster and woodwork that is architecturally significant to the original design and function of the house. Abrasive cleaning of such an interior would be destructive to the historic integrity of the building.

Abrasive cleaning is also impractical. Rough surfaces of abrasively cleaned wooden elements are hard to keep clean. It is also difficult to seal, paint or maintain these surfaces which can be splintery and a problem to the building's occupants. The force of abrasive blasting may cause grit particles to lodge in cracks of wooden elements, which will be a nuisance as the grit is loosened by vibrations and gradually sifts out. Removal of plaster will reduce the thermal and insulating value of the walls. Interior brick is usually softer than exterior brick, and generally of a poorer quality. Removing surface plaster from such brick by abrasive means often exposes gaping mortar joints and mismatched or repaired brickwork which was never intended to show. The resulting bare brick wall may require repointing, often difficult to match. It also may be necessary to apply a transparent surface coating (or sealer) in order to prevent the mortar and brick from "dusting." However, a sealer may not only change the color of the brick, but may also compound any existing moisture problems by restricting the normal evaporation of water vapor from the masonry surface.

"Gentlest Means Possible"

There are alternative means of removing dirt, stains and paint from historic building surfaces that can be recommended as more efficient and less destructive than abrasive techniques. The "gentlest means possible" of removing dirt from a building surface can be achieved by using a low-pressure water wash, scrubbing areas of more persistent grime with a natural bristle (never metal) brush. Steam cleaning can also be used effectively to clean some historic building fabric. Low-pressure water or steam will soften the dirt and cause the deposits to rise to the surface, where they can be washed away.

A third cleaning technique which may be recommended to remove dirt, as well as stains, graffiti or paint, involves the use of commercially available chemical cleaners or paint removers, which, when applied to masonry, loosen or dissolve the dirt or stains. These cleaning agents may be used in combination with water or steam, followed by a clear water wash to remove the residue of dirt and the chemical cleaners from the masonry. A natural bristle brush may also facilitate this type of chemically assisted cleaning, particularly in areas of heavy dirt deposits or stains, and a wooden scraper can be



Do not Abrasively Clean these Interiors. Most historic residential and some commercial interior spaces contain finished plaster and wooden elements such as this stair balustrade and paneling which contribute to the historic and architectural character of the structure. Such interiors should not be subjected to abrasive techniques for the purpose of removing paint, dirt, discoloration or plaster.

useful in removing thick encrustations of soot. A limewash or absorbent talc, whitening or clay poultice with a solvent can be used effectively to draw out salts or stains from the surface of the selected areas of a building façade. It is almost impossible to remove paint from masonry surfaces without causing some damage to the masonry, and it is best to leave the surfaces as they are or repaint them if necessary.

Some physicists are experimenting with the use of pulsed laser beams and xenon flash lamps for cleaning historic masonry surfaces. At this time it is a slow, expensive cleaning method, but its initial success indicates that it may have an increasingly important role in the future.

There are many chemical paint removers which, when applied to painted wood, soften and dissolve the paint so that it can be scraped off by hand. Peeling paint can be removed from wood by hand scraping and sanding. Particularly thick layers of paint may be softened with a heat gun or heat plate, providing appropriate precautions are taken, and the paint film scraped off by hand. Too much heat applied to the same spot can burn the wood, and the fumes caused by burning paint are dangerous to inhale, and can be explosive. Furthermore, the hot air from heat guns can start fires in the building cavity. Thus, adequate ventilation is important when using a heat gun or heat plate, as well as when using a chemical stripper. A torch or open flame should never be used.

Preparations for Cleaning: It cannot be overemphasized that all of these cleaning methods must be approached with cau-

tion. When using any of these procedures which involve water or other liquid cleaning agents on masonry, it is imperative that *all* openings be tightly covered, and all cracks or joints be well pointed in order to avoid the danger of water penetrating the building's facade, a circumstance which might result in serious moisture related problems such as efflorescence and/or subflorescence. Any time water is used on masonry as a cleaning agent, either in its pure state or in combination with chemical cleaners, it is very important that the work be done in warm weather when there is no danger of frost for several months. Otherwise water which has penetrated the masonry may freeze, eventually causing the surface of the building to crack and spall, which may create another conservation problem more serious to the health of the building than dirt.

Each kind of masonry has a unique composition and reacts differently with various chemical cleaning substances. Water and/or chemicals may interact with minerals in stone and cause new types of stains to leach out to the surface immediately, or more gradually in a delayed reaction. What may be a safe and effective cleaner for certain stain on one type of stone, may leave unattractive discolorations on another stone, or totally dissolve a third type.

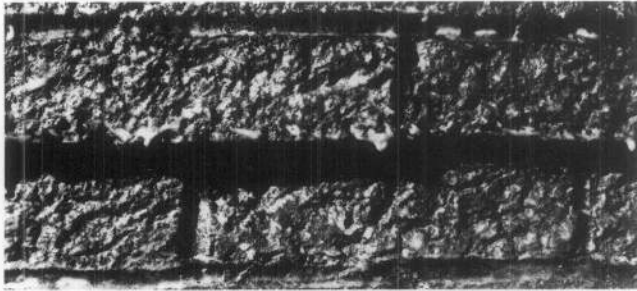
Testing: Cleaning historic building materials, particularly masonry, is a technically complex subject, and thus, should never be done without expert consultation and testing. No cleaning project should be undertaken without first applying the intended cleaning agent to a representative test patch area in an inconspicuous location on the building surface. The test patch or patches should be allowed to weather for a period of time, preferably through a complete seasonal cycle, in order to determine that the cleaned area will not be adversely affected by wet or freezing weather or any by-products of the cleaning process.

Mitigating the Effects of Abrasive Cleaning

There are certain restoration measures which can be adopted to help preserve a historic building exterior which has been damaged by abrasive methods. Wood that has been sandblasted will exhibit a frayed or "fuzzed" surface, or a harder wood will have an exaggerated raised grain. The only way to remove this rough surface or to smooth the grain is by laborious sanding. Sandblasted wood, unless it has been extensively sanded, serves as a dustcatcher, will weather faster, and will present a continuing and ever worsening maintenance problem. Such wood, after sanding, should be painted or given a clear surface coating to protect the wood, and allow for somewhat easier maintenance.

There are few successful preservative treatments that may be applied to grit-blasted exterior masonry. Harder, denser stone may have suffered only a loss of crisp edges or tool marks, or other indications of craft technique. If the stone has a compact and uniform composition, it should continue to weather with little additional deterioration. But some types of sandstone, marble and limestone will weather at an accelerated rate once their protective "quarry crust" or patina has been removed.

Softer types of masonry, particularly brick and architectural terra-cotta, are the most likely to require some remedial treatment if they have been abrasively cleaned. Old brick, being essentially a soft, baked clay product, is greatly susceptible to increased deterioration when its hard, outer skin is removed through abrasive techniques. This problem can be minimized by painting the brick. An alternative is to treat it with a clear sealer or surface coating but this will give the masonry a glossy or shiny look. It is usually preferable to paint the brick rather than to apply a transparent sealer since



Hazards of Sandblasting and Surface Coating. In order to "protect" this heavily sandblasted brick, a clear surface coating or sealer was applied. Because the air temperature was too cold at the time of application, the sealer failed to dry properly, dripping in places, and giving the brick surface a cloudy appearance.

sealers reduce the transpiration of moisture, allowing salts to crystallize as subflorescence that eventually spalls the brick. If a brick surface has been so extensively damaged by abrasive cleaning and weathering that spalling has already begun, it may be necessary to cover the walls with stucco, if it will adhere.

Of course, the application of paint, a clear surface coating (sealer), or stucco to deteriorating masonry means that the historical appearance will be sacrificed in an attempt to conserve the historic building materials. However, the original color and texture will have been changed already by the abrasive treatment. At this point it is more important to try to preserve the brick, and there is little choice but to protect it from "dusting" or spalling too rapidly. As a last resort, in the case of severely spalling brick, there may be no option but to replace the brick—a difficult, expensive (particularly if custom-made reproduction brick is used), and lengthy process. As described earlier, sandblasted interior brick work, while not subject to change of weather, may require the application of a transparent surface coating or painting as a maintenance procedure to contain loose mortar and brick dust. (See Preservation Briefs: No. 1 for a more thorough discussion of coatings.)

Metals, other than cast or wrought iron, that have been pitted and dented by harsh abrasive blasting usually cannot be smoothed out. Although fillers may be satisfactory for smoothing a painted surface, exposed metal that has been damaged usually will have to be replaced.

Summary

Sandblasting or other abrasive methods of cleaning or paint removal are by their nature destructive to historic building materials and should not be used on historic buildings except in a few well-monitored instances. There are exceptions when certain types of abrasive cleaning may be permissible, but only if conducted by a trained conservator, and if cleaning is necessary for the preservation of the historic structure.

There is no one formula that will be suitable for cleaning all historic building surfaces. Although there are many commercial cleaning products and methods available, it is impossible to state definitively which of these will be the most effective without causing harm to the building fabric. It is often difficult to identify ingredients or their proportions contained in cleaning products; consequently it is hard to predict how a product will react to the building materials to be cleaned. Similar uncertainties affect the outcome of other cleaning methods as they are applied to historic building materials. Further advances in understanding the complex nature of the many variables of the cleaning techniques may someday provide a better and simpler solution to the problems. But until that time, the process of cleaning historic buildings must be approached with caution through trial and error.

It is important to remember that historic building materials are neither indestructible, nor are they renewable. They must be treated in a responsible manner, which may mean little or no cleaning at all if they are to be preserved for future generations to enjoy. If it is in the best interest of the building to clean it, then it should be done "using the gentlest means possible."



Selected Reading List

- Ashurst, John. *Cleaning Stone and Brick*. Technical Pamphlet 4. London: Society for the Protection of Ancient Buildings, 1977.
- Asmus, John F. "Light Cleaning: Laser Technology for Surface Preparation in the Arts." *Technology and Conservation*, 3: 3 (Fall 1978), pp. 14-18.
- "The Bare-Brick Mistake." *The Old House Journal*, 1: 2 (November 1973), p. 2.
- Brick Institute of America. *Colorless Coatings for Brick Masonry*. Technical Notes on Brick Construction, Number 7E (September/October 1976).
- Gilder, Cornelia Brooke. *Property Owner's Guide to the Maintenance and Repair of Stone Buildings*. Technical Series/ No. 5. Albany, New York: The Preservation League of New York State, 1977.
- Prudon, Theodore H.M. "The Case Against Removing Paint from Brick Masonry." *The Old House Journal*, III: 2 (February 1975), pp. 6-7.
- . "Removing Stains from Masonry." *The Old House Journal*, V: 5 (May 1977), pp. 58-59.
- Stambolov, T., and J.R.J. Van Asperen de Boer. *The Deterioration and Conservation of Porous Building Materials in Monuments: A Review of the Literature*. Second enlarged edition. Rome: International Centre for Conservation, 1976.

Weiss, Norman R. "Cleaning of Building Exteriors: Problems and Procedures of Dirt Removal." *Technology and Conservation*, 2/76 (Fall 1976), pp. 8-13.

———. *Exterior Cleaning of Historic Masonry Buildings*. Draft. Washington, D.C.: Office of Archeology and Historic Preservation, Heritage Conservation and Recreation Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, 1976.

This Preservation Brief was written by Anne E. Grimmer, Architectural Historian, Technical Preservation Services Division. Valuable suggestions and comments were made by Hugh C. Miller, AIA, Washington, D.C.; Martin E. Weaver, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada; Terry Bryant, Downers Grove, Illinois; Daniel C. Cammer, McLean, Virginia; and the professional staff of Technical Preservation Services Division. Deborah Cooney edited the final manuscript.

The illustrations for this brief not specifically credited are from the files of the Technical Preservation Services Division.

This publication was prepared pursuant to Executive Order 11593, "Protection and Enhancement of the Cultural Environment," which directs the Secretary of the Interior to "develop and make available to Federal agencies and State and local governments information concerning professional methods and techniques for preserving, improving, restoring and maintaining historic properties." The Brief has been developed under the technical editorship of Lee H. Nelson, AIA, Chief, Preservation Assistance Division, National Park Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, Washington, D.C. 20240. Comments on the usefulness of this information are welcome and can be sent to Mr. Nelson at the above address. This publication is not copyrighted and can be reproduced without penalty. Normal procedures for credit to the author and the National Park Service are appreciated. June 1979.



U.S. Department of the Interior
National Park Service
Cultural Resources
Heritage Preservation Services

Preservation Briefs: 9

The Repair of Historic Wooden Windows

John H. Myers

The windows on many historic buildings are an important aspect of the architectural character of those buildings. Their design, craftsmanship, or other qualities may make them worthy of preservation. This is self-evident for ornamental windows, but it can be equally true for warehouses or factories where the windows may be the most dominant visual element of an otherwise plain building (see figure 1). Evaluating the significance of these windows and planning for their repair or replacement can be a complex process involving both objective and subjective considerations. The *Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation*, and the accompanying guidelines, call for respecting the significance of original materials and features, repairing and retaining them wherever possible, and when necessary, replacing them in kind. This Brief is based on the issues of significance and repair which are implicit in the standards, but the primary emphasis is on the technical issues of planning for the repair of windows including evaluation of their physical condition, techniques of repair, and design considerations when replacement is necessary.

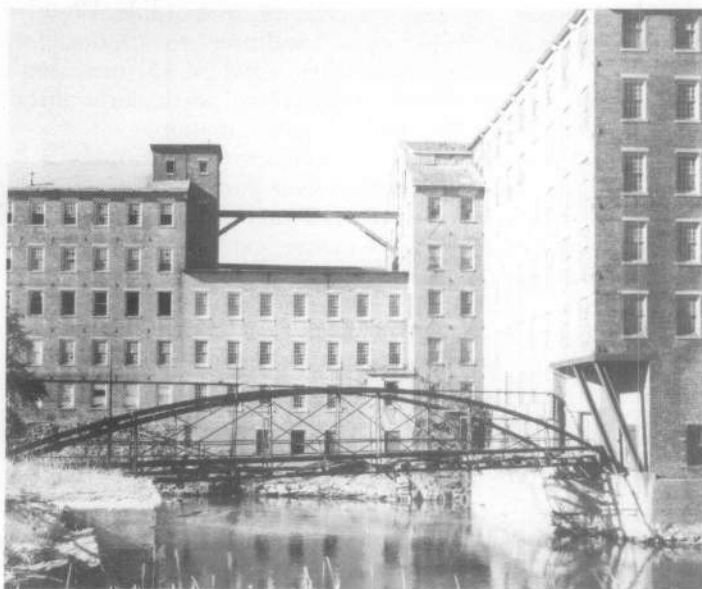


Figure 1. Windows are frequently important visual focal points, especially on simple facades such as this mill building. Replacement of the multi-pane windows here with larger panes could dramatically change the appearance of the building. The areas of missing windows convey the impression of such a change. Photo: John T. Lowe

Much of the technical section presents repair techniques as an instructional guide for the do-it-yourselfer. The information will be useful, however, for the architect, contractor, or developer on large-scale projects. It presents a methodology for approaching the evaluation and repair of existing windows, and considerations for replacement, from which the professional can develop alternatives and specify appropriate materials and procedures.

Architectural or Historical Significance

Evaluating the architectural or historical significance of windows is the first step in planning for window treatments, and a general understanding of the function and history of windows is vital to making a proper evaluation. As a part of this evaluation, one must consider four basic window functions: admitting light to the interior spaces, providing fresh air and ventilation to the interior, providing a visual link to the outside world, and enhancing the appearance of a building. No single factor can be disregarded when planning window treatments; for example, attempting to conserve energy by closing up or reducing the size of window openings may result in the use of *more* energy by increasing electric lighting loads and decreasing passive solar heat gains.

Historically, the first windows in early American houses were casement windows; that is, they were hinged at the side and opened outward. In the beginning of the eighteenth century single- and double-hung windows were introduced. Subsequently many styles of these vertical sliding sash windows have come to be associated with specific building periods or architectural styles, and this is an important consideration in determining the significance of windows, especially on a local or regional basis. Site-specific, regionally oriented architectural comparisons should be made to determine the significance of windows in question. Although such comparisons may focus on specific window types and their details, the ultimate determination of significance should be made within the context of the whole building, wherein the windows are one architectural element (see figure 2).

After all of the factors have been evaluated, *windows should be considered significant to a building if they:* 1) are original, 2) reflect the original design intent for the building, 3) reflect period or regional styles or building practices, 4) reflect changes to the building resulting from major periods or events, or 5) are examples of exceptional craftsmanship or design. Once this evaluation of significance has been completed, it is possible to pro-

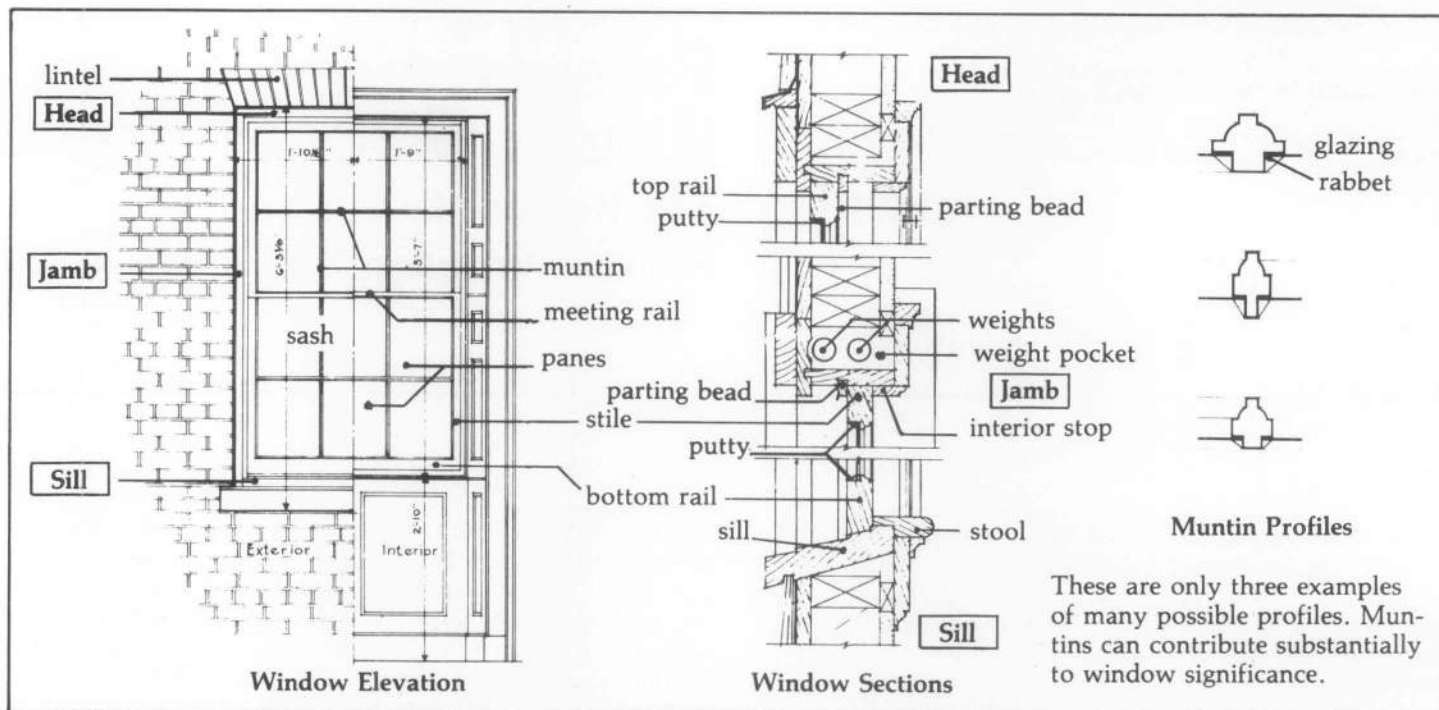


Figure 2. These drawings of window details identify major components, terminology, and installation details for a wooden double-hung window.

ceed with planning appropriate treatments, beginning with an investigation of the physical condition of the windows.

Physical Evaluation

The key to successful planning for window treatments is a careful evaluation of existing physical conditions on a unit-by-unit basis. A graphic or photographic system may be devised to record existing conditions and illustrate the scope of any necessary repairs. Another effective tool is a window schedule which lists all of the parts of each window unit. Spaces by each part allow notes on existing conditions and repair instructions. When such a schedule is completed, it indicates the precise tasks to be performed in the repair of each unit and becomes a part of the specifications. In any evaluation, one should note at a minimum, 1) window location, 2) condition of the paint, 3) condition of the frame and sill, 4) condition of the sash (rails, stiles and muntins), 5) glazing problems, 6) hardware, and 7) the overall condition of the window (excellent, fair, poor, and so forth).

Many factors such as poor design, moisture, vandalism, insect attack, and lack of maintenance can contribute to window deterioration, but moisture is the primary contributing factor in wooden window decay. All window units should be inspected to see if water is entering around the edges of the frame and, if so, the joints or seams should be caulked to eliminate this danger. The glazing putty should be checked for cracked, loose, or missing sections which allow water to saturate the wood, especially at the joints. The back putty on the interior side of the pane should also be inspected, because it creates a seal which prevents condensation from running down into the joinery. The sill should be examined to insure that it slopes downward away from the building and allows water to drain off. In addition, it may be advisable to cut a dripline along the underside of the sill. This almost invisible treatment will insure proper water run-off, particu-

larly if the bottom of the sill is flat. Any conditions, including poor original design, which permit water to come in contact with the wood or to puddle on the sill must be corrected as they contribute to deterioration of the window.

One clue to the location of areas of excessive moisture is the condition of the paint; therefore, each window should be examined for areas of paint failure. Since excessive moisture is detrimental to the paint bond, areas of paint blistering, cracking, flaking, and peeling usually identify points of water penetration, moisture saturation, and potential deterioration. Failure of the paint should not, however, be mistakenly interpreted as a sign that the wood is in poor condition and hence, irreparable. Wood is frequently in sound physical condition beneath unsightly paint. After noting areas of paint failure, the next step is to inspect the condition of the wood, particularly at the points identified during the paint examination.

Each window should be examined for operational soundness beginning with the lower portions of the frame and sash. Exterior rainwater and interior condensation can flow downward along the window, entering and collecting at points where the flow is blocked. The sill, joints between the sill and jamb, corners of the bottom rails and muntin joints are typical points where water collects and deterioration begins (see figure 3). The operation of the window (continuous opening and closing over the years and seasonal temperature changes) weakens the joints, causing movement and slight separation. This process makes the joints more vulnerable to water which is readily absorbed into the end-grain of the wood. If severe deterioration exists in these areas, it will usually be apparent on visual inspection, but other less severely deteriorated areas of the wood may be tested by two traditional methods using a small ice pick.

An ice pick or an awl may be used to test wood for soundness. The technique is simply to jab the pick into a wetted wood surface at an angle and pry up a small sec-

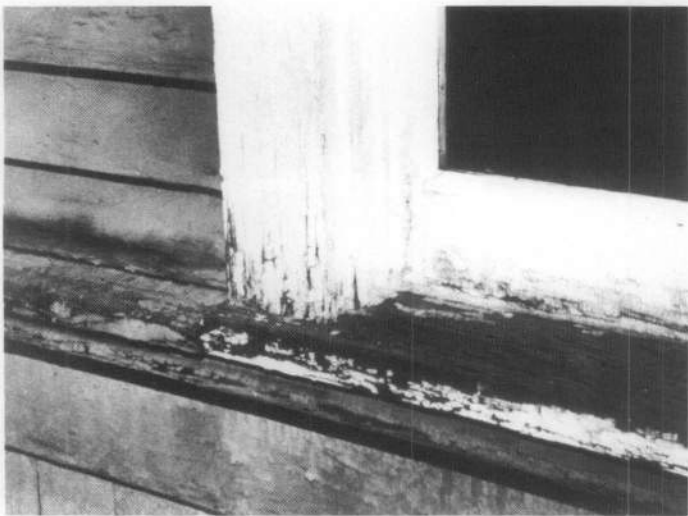


Figure 3. Deterioration of poorly maintained windows usually begins on horizontal surfaces and at joints where water can collect and saturate the wood. The problem areas are clearly indicated by paint failure due to moisture. Photo: Baird M. Smith, AIA

tion of the wood. Sound wood will separate in long fibrous splinters, but decayed wood will lift up in short irregular pieces due to the breakdown of fiber strength.

Another method of testing for soundness consists of pushing a sharp object into the wood, perpendicular to the surface. If deterioration has begun from the hidden side of a member and the core is badly decayed, the visible surface may appear to be sound wood. Pressure on the probe can force it through an apparently sound skin to penetrate deeply into decayed wood. This technique is especially useful for checking sills where visual access to the underside is restricted.

Following the inspection and analysis of the results, the scope of the necessary repairs will be evident and a plan for the rehabilitation can be formulated. Generally the actions necessary to return a window to "like new" condition will fall into three broad categories: 1) routine maintenance procedures, 2) structural stabilization, and 3) parts replacement. These categories will be discussed in the following sections and will be referred to respectively as Repair Class I, Repair Class II, and Repair Class III. Each successive repair class represents an increasing level of difficulty, expense, and work time. Note that most of the points mentioned in Repair Class I are routine maintenance items and should be provided in a regular maintenance program for any building. The neglect of these routine items can contribute to many common window problems.

Before undertaking any of the repairs mentioned in the following sections all sources of moisture penetration should be identified and eliminated, and all existing decay fungi destroyed in order to arrest the deterioration process. Many commercially available fungicides and wood preservatives are toxic, so it is extremely important to follow the manufacturer's recommendations for application, and store all chemical materials away from children and animals. After fungicidal and preservative treatment the windows may be stabilized, retained, and restored with every expectation for a long service life.

Repair Class I: Routine Maintenance

Repairs to wooden windows are usually labor intensive and relatively uncomplicated. On small scale projects this

allows the do-it-yourselfer to save money by repairing all or part of the windows. On larger projects it presents the opportunity for time and money which might otherwise be spent on the removal and replacement of existing windows, to be spent on repairs, subsequently saving all or part of the material cost of new window units. Regardless of the actual costs, or who performs the work, the evaluation process described earlier will provide the knowledge from which to specify an appropriate work program, establish the work element priorities, and identify the level of skill needed by the labor force.

The routine maintenance required to upgrade a window to "like new" condition normally includes the following steps: 1) some degree of interior and exterior paint removal, 2) removal and repair of sash (including reglazing where necessary), 3) repairs to the frame, 4) weatherstripping and reinstallation of the sash, and 5) repainting. These operations are illustrated for a typical double-hung wooden window (see figures 4a-f), but they may be adapted to other window types and styles as applicable.

Historic windows have usually acquired many layers of paint over time. Removal of excess layers or peeling and flaking paint will facilitate operation of the window and restore the clarity of the original detailing. Some degree of paint removal is also necessary as a first step in the proper surface preparation for subsequent refinishing (if paint color analysis is desired, it should be conducted prior to the onset of the paint removal). There are several safe and effective techniques for removing paint from wood, depending on the amount of paint to be removed. Several techniques such as scraping, chemical stripping, and the use of a hot air gun are discussed in "Preservation Briefs: 10 Paint Removal from Historic Woodwork" (see Additional Reading section at end).

Paint removal should begin on the interior frames, being careful to remove the paint from the interior stop and the parting bead, particularly along the seam where these stops meet the jamb. This can be accomplished by running a utility knife along the length of the seam, breaking the paint bond. It will then be much easier to remove the stop, the parting bead and the sash. The interior stop may be initially loosened from the sash side to avoid visible scarring of the wood and then gradually pried loose using a pair of putty knives, working up and down the stop in small increments (see figure 4b). With the stop removed, the lower or interior sash may be withdrawn. The sash cords should be detached from the sides of the sash and their ends may be pinned with a nail or tied in a knot to prevent them from falling into the weight pocket.

Removal of the upper sash on double-hung units is similar but the parting bead which holds it in place is set into a groove in the center of the stile and is thinner and more delicate than the interior stop. After removing any paint along the seam, the parting bead should be carefully pried out and worked free in the same manner as the interior stop. The upper sash can be removed in the same manner as the lower one and both sash taken to a convenient work area (in order to remove the sash the interior stop and parting bead need only be removed from one side of the window). Window openings can be covered with polyethylene sheets or plywood sheathing while the sash are out for repair.

The sash can be stripped of paint using appropriate techniques, but if any heat treatment is used (see figure 4c), the glass should be removed or protected from the sudden temperature change which can cause breakage. An



Figure 4a. The following series of photographs of the repair of a historic double-hung window use a unit which is structurally sound but has many layers of paint, some cracked and missing putty, slight separation at the joints, broken sash cords, and one cracked pane. Photo: John H. Myers



Figure 4b. After removing paint from the seam between the interior stop and the jamb, the stop can be pried out and gradually worked loose using a pair of putty knives as shown. To avoid visible scarring of the wood, the sash can be raised and the stop pried loose initially from the outer side. Photo: John H. Myers



Figure 4c. Sash can be removed and repaired in a convenient work area. Paint is being removed from this sash with a hot air gun while an asbestos sheet protects the glass from sudden temperature change. Photo: John H. Myers

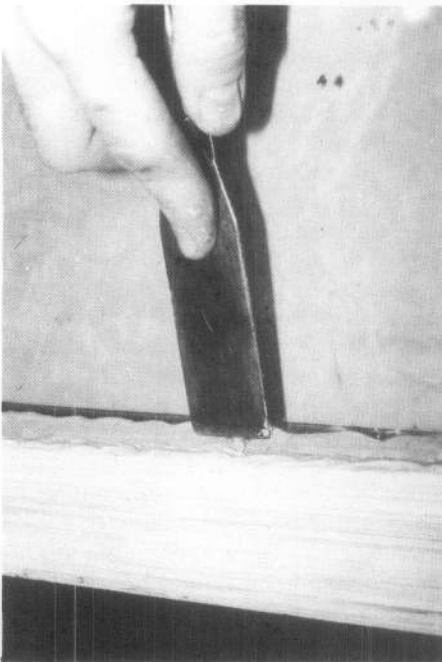


Figure 4d. Reglazing or replacement of the putty requires that the existing putty be removed manually, the glazing points be extracted, the glass removed, and the back putty scraped out. To reglaze, a bed of putty is laid around the perimeter of the rabbet, the pane is pressed into place, glazing points are inserted to hold the pane (shown), and a final seal of putty is beveled around the edge of the glass. Photo: John H. Myers



Figure 4e. A common repair is the replacement of broken sash cords with new cords (shown) or with chains. The weight pocket is often accessible through a removable plate in the jamb, or by removing the interior trim. Photo: John H. Myers



Figure 4f. Following the relatively simple repairs, the window is weathertight, like new in appearance, and serviceable for many years to come. Both the historic material and the detailing and craftsmanship of this original window have been preserved. Photo: John H. Myers

overlay of aluminum foil on gypsum board or asbestos can protect the glass from such rapid temperature change. It is important to protect the glass because it may be historic and often adds character to the window. Deteriorated putty should be removed manually, taking care not to damage the wood along the rabbet. If the glass is to be removed, the glazing points which hold the glass in place can be extracted and the panes numbered and removed for cleaning and reuse in the same openings. With the glass panes out, the remaining putty can be removed and the sash can be sanded, patched, and primed with a preservative primer. Hardened putty in the rabbets may be softened by heating with a soldering iron at the point of removal. Putty remaining on the glass may be softened by soaking the panes in linseed oil, and then removed with less risk of breaking the glass. Before reinstalling the glass, a bead of glazing compound or linseed oil putty should be laid around the rabbet to cushion and seal the glass. Glazing compound should only be used on wood which has been brushed with linseed oil and primed with an oil based primer or paint. The pane is then pressed into place and the glazing points are pushed into the wood around the perimeter of the pane (see figure 4d). The final glazing compound or putty is applied and beveled to complete the seal. The sash can be refinished as desired on the inside and painted on the outside as soon as a "skin" has formed on the putty, usually in 2 or 3 days. Exterior paint should cover the beveled glazing compound or putty and lap over onto the glass slightly to complete a weathertight seal. After the proper curing times have elapsed for paint and putty, the sash will be ready for reinstallation.

While the sash are out of the frame, the condition of the wood in the jamb and sill can be evaluated. Repair and refinishing of the frame may proceed concurrently with repairs to the sash, taking advantage of the curing times for the paints and putty used on the sash. One of the most common work items is the replacement of the sash cords with new rope cords or with chains (see figure 4e). The weight pocket is frequently accessible through a door on the face of the frame near the sill, but if no door exists, the trim on the interior face may be removed for access. Sash weights may be increased for easier window operation by elderly or handicapped persons. Additional repairs to the frame and sash may include consolidation or replacement of deteriorated wood. Techniques for these repairs are discussed in the following sections.

The operations just discussed summarize the efforts necessary to restore a window with minor deterioration to "like new" condition (see figure 4f). The techniques can be applied by an unskilled person with minimal training and experience. To demonstrate the practicality of this approach, and photograph it, a Technical Preservation Services staff member repaired a wooden double-hung, two over two window which had been in service over ninety years. The wood was structurally sound but the window had one broken pane, many layers of paint, broken sash cords and inadequate, worn-out weatherstripping. The staff member found that the frame could be stripped of paint and the sash removed quite easily. Paint, putty and glass removal required about one hour for each sash, and the reglazing of both sash was accomplished in about one hour. Weatherstripping of the sash and frame, replacement of the sash cords and reinstallation of the sash, parting bead, and stop required an hour and a half. These times refer only to individual operations; the entire proc-

ess took several days due to the drying and curing times for putty, primer, and paint, however, work on other window units could have been in progress during these lag times.

Repair Class II: Stabilization

The preceding description of a window repair job focused on a unit which was operationally sound. Many windows will show some additional degree of physical deterioration, especially in the vulnerable areas mentioned earlier, but even badly damaged windows can be repaired using simple processes. Partially decayed wood can be water-proofed, patched, built-up, or consolidated and then painted to achieve a sound condition, good appearance, and greatly extended life. Three techniques for repairing partially decayed or weathered wood are discussed in this section, and all three can be accomplished using products available at most hardware stores.

One established technique for repairing wood which is split, checked or shows signs of rot, is to: 1) dry the wood, 2) treat decayed areas with a fungicide, 3) water-proof with two or three applications of boiled linseed oil (applications every 24 hours), 4) fill cracks and holes with putty, and 5) after a "skin" forms on the putty, paint the surface. Care should be taken with the use of fungicide which is toxic. Follow the manufacturers' directions and use only on areas which will be painted. When using any technique of building up or patching a flat surface, the finished surface should be sloped slightly to carry water away from the window and not allow it to puddle. Caulking of the joints between the sill and the jamb will help reduce further water penetration.

When sills or other members exhibit surface weathering they may also be built-up using wood putties or home-made mixtures such as sawdust and resorcinol glue, or whitening and varnish. These mixtures can be built up in successive layers, then sanded, primed, and painted. The same caution about proper slope for flat surfaces applies to this technique.

Wood may also be strengthened and stabilized by consolidation, using semi-rigid epoxies which saturate the porous decayed wood and then harden. The surface of the consolidated wood can then be filled with a semi-rigid epoxy patching compound, sanded and painted (see figure 5). Epoxy patching compounds can be used to build up

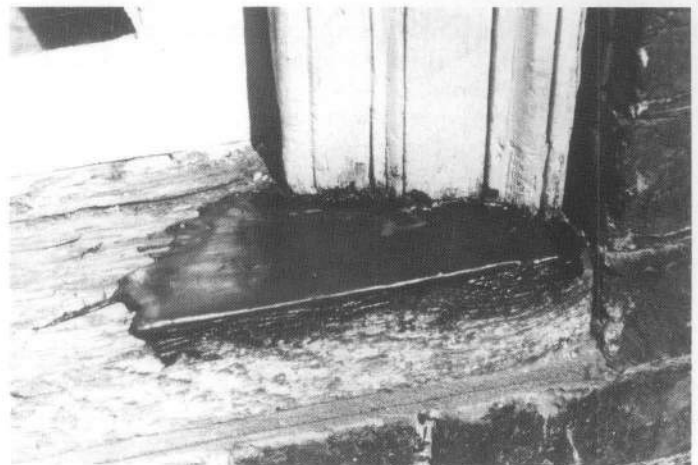


Figure 5. This illustrates a two-part epoxy patching compound used to fill the surface of a weathered sill and rebuild the missing edge. When the epoxy cures, it can be sanded smooth and painted to achieve a durable and waterproof repair. Photo: John H. Myers

missing sections or decayed ends of members. Profiles can be duplicated using hand molds, which are created by pressing a ball of patching compound over a sound section of the profile which has been rubbed with butcher's wax. This can be a very efficient technique where there are many typical repairs to be done. Technical Preservation Services has published *Epoxy for Wood Repairs in Historic Buildings* (see Additional Reading section at end), which discusses the theory and techniques of epoxy repairs. The process has been widely used and proven in marine applications; and proprietary products are available at hardware and marine supply stores. Although epoxy materials may be comparatively expensive, they hold the promise of being among the most durable and long lasting materials available for wood repair.

Any of the three techniques discussed can stabilize and restore the appearance of the window unit. There are times, however, when the degree of deterioration is so advanced that stabilization is impractical, and the only way to retain some of the original fabric is to replace damaged parts.

Repair Class III: Splices and Parts Replacement

When parts of the frame or sash are so badly deteriorated that they cannot be stabilized there are methods which permit the retention of some of the existing or original fabric. These methods involve replacing the deteriorated parts with new matching pieces, or splicing new wood into existing members. The techniques require more skill and are more expensive than any of the previously discussed alternatives. It is necessary to remove the sash and/or the affected parts of the frame and have a carpenter or woodworking mill reproduce the damaged or missing parts. Most millwork firms can duplicate parts, such as muntins, bottom rails, or sills, which can then be incorporated into the existing window, but it may be necessary to shop around because there are several factors controlling the practicality of this approach. Some woodworking mills do not like to repair old sash because nails or other foreign objects in the sash can damage expensive knives (which cost far more than their profits on small repair jobs); others do not have cutting knives to duplicate muntin profiles. Some firms prefer to concentrate on larger jobs with more profit potential, and some may not have a craftsman who can duplicate the parts. A little searching should locate a firm which will do the job, and at a reasonable price. If such a firm does not exist locally, there are firms which undertake this kind of repair and ship nationwide. It is possible, however, for the advanced do-it-yourselfer or craftsman with a table saw to duplicate moulding profiles using techniques discussed by Gordie Whittington in "Simplified Methods for Reproducing Wood Mouldings," *Bulletin of the Association for Preservation Technology*, Vol. III, No. 4, 1971, or illustrated more recently in *The Old House*, Time-Life Books, Alexandria, Virginia, 1979.

The repairs discussed in this section involve window frames which may be in very deteriorated condition, possibly requiring removal; therefore, caution is in order. The actual construction of wooden window frames and sash is not complicated. Pegged mortise and tenon units can be disassembled easily, if the units are out of the building. The installation or connection of some frames to the surrounding structure, especially masonry walls, can complicate the work immeasurably, and may even require

dismantling of the wall. It may be useful, therefore, to take the following approach to frame repair: 1) conduct regular maintenance of sound frames to achieve the longest life possible, 2) make necessary repairs in place wherever possible, using stabilization and splicing techniques, and 3) if removal is necessary, thoroughly investigate the structural detailing and seek appropriate professional consultation.

Another alternative may be considered if parts replacement is required, and that is sash replacement. If extensive replacement of parts is necessary and the job becomes prohibitively expensive it may be more practical to purchase new sash which can be installed into the existing frames. Such sash are available as exact custom reproductions, reasonable facsimiles (custom windows with similar profiles), and contemporary wooden sash which are similar in appearance. There are companies which still manufacture high quality wooden sash which would duplicate most historic sash. A few calls to local building suppliers may provide a source of appropriate replacement sash, but if not, check with local historical associations, the state historic preservation office, or preservation related magazines and supply catalogs for information.

If a rehabilitation project has a large number of windows such as a commercial building or an industrial complex, there may be less of a problem arriving at a solution. Once the evaluation of the windows is completed and the scope of the work is known, there may be a potential economy of scale. Woodworking mills may be interested in the work from a large project; new sash in volume may be considerably less expensive per unit; crews can be assembled and trained on site to perform all of the window repairs; and a few extensive repairs can be absorbed (without undue burden) into the total budget for a large number of sound windows. While it may be expensive for the average historic home owner to pay seventy dollars or more for a mill to grind a custom knife to duplicate four or five bad muntins, that cost becomes negligible on large commercial projects which may have several hundred windows.

Most windows should not require the extensive repairs discussed in this section. The ones which do are usually in buildings which have been abandoned for long periods or have totally lacked maintenance for years. It is necessary to thoroughly investigate the alternatives for windows which do require extensive repairs to arrive at a solution which retains historic significance and is also economically feasible. Even for projects requiring repairs identified in this section, if the percentage of parts replacement per window is low, or the number of windows requiring repair is small, repair can still be a cost effective solution.

Weatherization

A window which is repaired should be made as energy efficient as possible by the use of appropriate weatherstripping to reduce air infiltration. A wide variety of products are available to assist in this task. Felt may be fastened to the top, bottom, and meeting rails, but may have the disadvantage of absorbing and holding moisture, particularly at the bottom rail. Rolled vinyl strips may also be tacked into place in appropriate locations to reduce infiltration. Metal strips or new plastic spring strips may be used on the rails and, if space permits, in

the channels between the sash and jamb. Weatherstripping is a historic treatment, but old weatherstripping (felt) is not likely to perform very satisfactorily. Appropriate contemporary weatherstripping should be considered an integral part of the repair process for windows. The use of sash locks installed on the meeting rail will insure that the sash are kept tightly closed so that the weatherstripping will function more effectively to reduce infiltration. Although such locks will not always be historically accurate, they will usually be viewed as an acceptable contemporary modification in the interest of improved thermal performance.

Many styles of storm windows are available to improve the thermal performance of existing windows. The use of exterior storm windows should be investigated whenever feasible because they are thermally efficient, cost-effective, reversible, and allow the retention of original windows (see "Preservation Briefs: 3"). Storm window frames may be made of wood, aluminum, vinyl, or plastic; however, the use of unfinished aluminum storms should be avoided. The visual impact of storms may be minimized by selecting colors which match existing trim color. Arched top storms are available for windows with special shapes. Although interior storm windows appear to offer an attractive option for achieving double glazing with minimal visual impact, the potential for damaging condensation problems must be addressed. Moisture which becomes trapped between the layers of glazing can condense on the colder, outer prime window, potentially leading to deterioration. The correct approach to using interior storms is to create a seal on the interior storm while allowing some ventilation around the prime window. In actual practice, the creation of such a durable, airtight seal is difficult.

Window Replacement

Although the retention of original or existing windows is always desirable and this **Brief** is intended to encourage that goal, there is a point when the condition of a window may clearly indicate replacement. The decision process for selecting replacement windows should *not* begin with a survey of contemporary window products which are available as replacements, but should begin with a look at the windows which are being replaced. Attempt to understand the contribution of the window(s) to the appearance of the facade including: 1) the pattern of the openings and their size; 2) proportions of the frame and sash; 3) configuration of window panes; 4) muntin profiles; 5) type of wood; 6) paint color; 7) characteristics of the glass; and 8) associated details such as arched tops, hoods, or other decorative elements. Develop an understanding of how the window reflects the period, style, or regional characteristics of the building, or represents technological development.

Armed with an awareness of the significance of the existing window, begin to search for a replacement which retains as much of the character of the historic window as possible. There are many sources of suitable new windows. Continue looking until an acceptable replacement can be found. Check building supply firms, local wood-working mills, carpenters, preservation oriented magazines, or catalogs or suppliers of old building materials, for product information. Local historical associations and state historic preservation offices may be good sources of

information on products which have been used successfully in preservation projects.

Consider energy efficiency as one of the factors for replacements, but do not let it dominate the issue. Energy conservation is no excuse for the wholesale destruction of historic windows which can be made thermally efficient by historically and aesthetically acceptable means. In fact, a historic wooden window with a high quality storm window added should thermally outperform a new double-glazed metal window which does not have thermal breaks (insulation between the inner and outer frames intended to break the path of heat flow). This occurs because the wood has far better insulating value than the metal, and in addition many historic windows have high ratios of wood to glass, thus reducing the area of highest heat transfer. One measure of heat transfer is the U-value, the number of Btu's per hour transferred through a square foot of material. When comparing thermal performance, the lower the U-value the better the performance. According to *ASHRAE 1977 Fundamentals*, the U-values for single glazed wooden windows range from 0.88 to 0.99. The addition of a storm window should reduce these figures to a range of 0.44 to 0.49. A non-thermal break, double-glazed metal window has a U-value of about 0.6.

Conclusion

Technical Preservation Services recommends the retention and repair of original windows whenever possible. We believe that the repair and weatherization of existing wooden windows is more practical than most people realize, and that many windows are unfortunately replaced because of a lack of awareness of techniques for evaluation, repair, and weatherization. Wooden windows which are repaired and properly maintained will have greatly extended service lives while contributing to the historic character of the building. Thus, an important element of a building's significance will have been preserved for the future.

Additional Reading

- ASHRAE Handbook-1977 Fundamentals*. New York: American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-conditioning Engineers, 1978 (chapter 26).
- Ferro, Maximillian. *Preservation: Present Pathway to Fall River's Future*. Fall River, Massachusetts: City of Fall River, 1979 (chapter 7).
- "Fixing Double-Hung Windows." *Old House Journal* (no. 12, 1979): 135.
- Look, David W. "Preservation Briefs: 10 Paint Removal from Historic Woodwork." Washington, DC: Technical Preservation Services, U.S. Department of the Interior, forthcoming.
- Morrison, Hugh. *Early American Architecture*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1952.
- Phillips, Morgan, and Selwyn, Judith. *Epoxies for Wood Repairs in Historic Buildings*. Washington, DC: Technical Preservation Services, U.S. Department of the Interior (Government Printing Office, Stock No. 024-016-00095-1), 1978.
- Rehab Right. Oakland, California: City of Oakland Planning Department, 1978 (pp. 78-83).
- "Sealing Leaky Windows." *Old House Journal* (no. 1, 1973): 5.
- Smith, Baird M. "Preservation Briefs: 3 Conserving Energy in Historic Buildings." Washington, DC: Technical Preservation Services, U.S. Department of the Interior, 1978.

10 PRESERVATION BRIEFS



Exterior Paint Problems on Historic Woodwork

Kay D. Weeks and David W. Look, AIA



U.S. Department of the Interior
National Park Service
Cultural Resources

Heritage Preservation Services

A cautionary approach to paint removal is included in the guidelines to "The Secretary of the Interior Standards for Historic Preservation Projects." Removing paints down to bare wood surfaces using harsh methods can permanently damage those surfaces; therefore such methods are not recommended. Also, total removal obliterates evidence of the historical paints and their sequence and architectural context.

This Brief expands on that advice for the architect, building manager, contractor, or homeowner by identifying and describing common types of paint surface conditions and failures, then recommending appropriate treatments for preparing exterior wood surfaces for repainting¹ to assure the best adhesion and greatest durability of the new paint. Although the Brief focuses on responsible methods of "paint removal," several paint surface conditions will be described which do not require any paint removal, and still others which can be successfully handled by limited paint removal. In all cases, the information is intended to address the concerns related to *exterior wood*. It will also be generally assumed that, because houses built before 1950 involve one or more layers of lead-base paint,² the majority of conditions warranting paint removal will mean dealing with this toxic substance along with the dangers of the paint removal tools and chemical strippers themselves.

Purposes of Exterior Paint

Paint³ applied to exterior wood must withstand yearly extremes of both temperature and humidity. While never expected to be more than a temporary physical shield—requiring re-application every 5-8 years—its importance should not be minimized. Because one of the main causes of wood deterioration is moisture penetration, a primary purpose for painting wood is to exclude such moisture, thereby slowing deterioration not only of a building's exterior siding and decorative features but, ultimately, its underlying structural members. Another important purpose for painting wood is, of course, to define and accent architectural features and to improve appearance.

Treating Paint Problems in Historic Buildings

Exterior paint is constantly deteriorating through the processes of weathering, but in a program of regular maintenance—assuming all other building systems are functioning properly—surfaces can be cleaned, lightly scraped, and hand sanded in preparation for a new finish coat. Unfortunately, these are ideal conditions. More often, complex maintenance problems are inherited by owners of

historic buildings, including areas of paint that have failed⁴ beyond the point of mere cleaning, scraping, and hand sanding (although much so-called "paint failure" is attributable to interior or exterior moisture problems or surface preparation and application mistakes with previous coats).

Although paint problems are by no means unique to historic buildings, treating multiple layers of hardened, brittle paint on complex, ornamental—and possibly fragile—exterior wood surfaces necessarily requires an extremely cautious approach (see figure 1). In the case of recent construction, this level of concern is not needed because the wood is generally less detailed and, in addition, retention of the sequence of paint layers as a partial record of the building's history is not an issue.

When historic buildings are involved, however, a special set of problems arises—varying in complexity depending upon their age, architectural style, historical importance, and physical soundness of the wood—which must be carefully evaluated so that decisions can be made that are sensitive to the longevity of the resource.

Justification for Paint Removal

At the outset of this Brief, it must be emphasized that removing paint from historic buildings—with the exception of cleaning, light scraping, and hand sanding as part of routine maintenance—should be avoided unless absolutely essential. *Once conditions warranting removal have*

¹ General paint type recommendations will be made, but paint color recommendations are beyond the scope of this Brief.

² Douglas R. Shier and William Hall, *Analysis of Housing Data Collected in a Lead-Based Paint Survey in Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, Part 1*. National Bureau of Standards, Inter-Report 77-1250, May 1977.

³ Any pigmented liquid, liquefiable, or mastic composition designed for application to a substrate in a thin layer which is converted to an opaque solid film after application. *Paint and Coatings Dictionary*, 1978. Federation of Societies for Coatings and Technology.

⁴ For purposes of the Brief, this includes any area of painted exterior woodwork displaying signs of peeling, cracking, or alligatoring to bare wood. See descriptions of these and other paint surface conditions as well as recommended treatments on pp. 5-10.



Fig. 1 Excessive paint build-up on architectural details such as this ornamental bracket does not in itself justify total paint removal. If paint is cracked and peeling down to bare wood, however, it should be removed using the gentlest means possible. Photo: David W. Look, AIA.

been identified, the general approach should be to remove paint to the next sound layer using the gentlest means possible, then to repaint (see figure 2). Practically speaking as well, paint can adhere just as effectively to existing paint as to bare wood, providing the previous coats of paint are also adhering uniformly and tightly to the wood and the surface is properly prepared for repainting—cleaned of dirt and chalk and dulled by sanding. But, if painted exterior wood surfaces display continuous patterns of deep cracks or if they are extensively blistering and peeling so that bare wood is visible, then the old paint should be completely removed before repainting. The only other justification for removing all previous layers of paint is if doors, shutters, or windows have literally been “painted shut,” or if new wood is being pieced-in adjacent to old painted wood and a smooth transition is desired (see figure 3).

Paint Removal Precautions

Because paint removal is a difficult and painstaking process, a number of costly, regrettable experiences have occurred—and continue to occur—for both the historic building and the building owner. Historic buildings have been set on fire with blow torches; wood irreversibly scarred by sandblasting or by harsh mechanical devices such as rotary sanders and rotary wire strippers; and layers of historic paint inadvertently and unnecessarily removed. In addition, property owners, using techniques that substitute speed for safety, have been injured by toxic lead vapors or dust from the paint they were trying to



Fig. 2 A traditionally painted bay window has been stripped to bare wood, then varnished. In addition to being historically inaccurate, the varnish will break down faster as a result of the sun's ultraviolet rays than would primer and finish coats of paint. Photo: David W. Look, AIA.

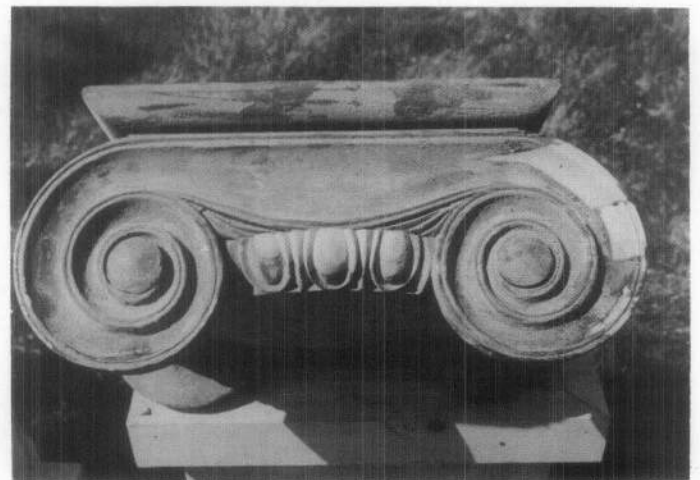


Fig. 3 If damage to parts of a wooden element is severe, new sections of wood will need to be pieced-in. When such piecing is required, paint on the adjacent woodwork should be removed so that the old and new woods will make a smooth profile when joined. After repainting, the repair should be virtually impossible to detect. Photo: Morgan W. Phillips.

remove or by misuse of the paint removers themselves.

Owners of historic properties considering paint removal should also be aware of the amount of time and labor involved. While removing damaged layers of paint from a door or porch railing might be readily accomplished within a reasonable period of time by one or two people, removing paint from larger areas of a building can, with-

out professional assistance, easily become unmanageable and produce less than satisfactory results. The amount of work involved in any paint removal project must therefore be analyzed on a case-by-case basis. Hiring qualified professionals will often be a cost-effective decision due to the expense of materials, the special equipment required, and the amount of time involved. Further, paint removal companies experienced in dealing with the inherent health and safety dangers of paint removal should have purchased such protective devices as are needed to mitigate any dangers and should also be aware of State or local environmental and/or health regulations for hazardous waste disposal.

All in all, paint removal is a messy, expensive, and potentially dangerous aspect of rehabilitating or restoring historic buildings and should not be undertaken without careful thought concerning first, its necessity, and second, which of the available recommended methods is the safest and most appropriate for the job at hand.

Repainting Historic Buildings for Cosmetic Reasons

If existing exterior paint on wood siding, eaves, window sills, sash, and shutters, doors, and decorative features shows no evidence of paint deterioration such as chalking, blistering, peeling, or cracking, then there is no *physical reason* to repaint, much less remove paint! Nor is color fading, of itself, sufficient justification to repaint a historic building.

The decision to repaint may not be based altogether on paint failure. Where there is a new owner, or even where ownership has remained constant through the years, taste in colors often changes. Therefore, if repainting is primarily to alter a building's primary and accent colors, a technical factor of paint accumulation should be taken into consideration. When paint builds up to a thickness of approximately 1/16" (approximately 16-30 layers), one or more extra coats of paint may be enough to trigger cracking and peeling in limited or even widespread areas of the building's surface. This results because excessively thick paint is less able to withstand the shrinkage or pull of an additional coat as it dries and is also less able to tolerate thermal stresses. Thick paint invariably fails at the weakest point of adhesion—the oldest layers next to the wood. Cracking and peeling follow. Therefore, if there are no signs of paint failure, it may be somewhat risky to add still another layer of unneeded paint simply for color's sake (extreme changes in color may also require more than one coat to provide proper hiding power and full color). When paint appears to be nearing the critical thickness, a change of accent colors (that is, just to limited portions of the trim) might be an acceptable compromise without chancing cracking and peeling of paint on wooden siding.

If the decision to repaint is nonetheless made, the "new" color or colors should, at a minimum, be appropriate to the style and setting of the building. On the other hand, where the intent is to restore or accurately reproduce the colors originally used or those from a significant period in the building's evolution, they should be based on the results of a paint analysis.⁵

Identification of Exterior Paint Surface Conditions/Recommended Treatments

It is assumed that a preliminary check will already have been made to determine, first, that the painted exterior surfaces are indeed wood—and not stucco, metal, or other wood substitutes—and second, that the wood has not decayed so that repainting would be superfluous. For example, if any area of bare wood such as window sills has been exposed for a long period of time to standing water, wood rot is a strong possibility (see figure 4). Repair or replacement of deteriorated wood should take place before repainting. After these two basic issues have been resolved, the surface condition identification process may commence.

The historic building will undoubtedly exhibit a variety of exterior paint surface conditions. For example, paint on the wooden siding and doors may be adhering firmly; paint on the eaves peeling; and paint on the porch balusters and window sills cracking and alligating. The accurate identification of each paint problem is therefore the first step in planning an appropriate overall solution.

Paint surface conditions can be grouped according to their relative severity: CLASS I conditions include minor blemishes or dirt collection and generally require *no* paint removal; CLASS II conditions include failure of the top layer or layers of paint and generally require *limited* paint removal; and CLASS III conditions include substantial or multiple-layer failure and generally require *total* paint removal. It is precisely because conditions will vary at different points on the building that a careful inspection is critical. Each item of painted exterior woodwork (i.e., siding, doors, windows, eaves, shutters, and decorative elements) should be examined early in the planning phase and surface conditions noted.

CLASS I Exterior Surface Conditions Generally Requiring No Paint Removal

- Dirt, Soot, Pollution, Cobwebs, Insect Cocoons, etc.

Cause of Condition

Environmental "grime" or organic matter that tends to cling to painted exterior surfaces and, in particular, protected surfaces such as eaves, do not constitute a paint problem unless painted over rather than removed prior to repainting. If not removed, the surface deposits can be a barrier to proper adhesion and cause peeling.

Recommended Treatment

Most surface matter can be loosened by a strong, direct stream of water from the nozzle of a garden hose. Stubborn dirt and soot will need to be scrubbed off using ½ cup of household detergent in a gallon of water with a medium soft bristle brush. The cleaned surface should then be rinsed thoroughly, and permitted to dry before further inspection to determine if repainting is necessary. Quite often, cleaning provides a satisfactory enough result to postpone repainting.

⁵ See the Reading List for paint research and documentation information. See also *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Historic Preservation Projects with Guidelines for Applying the Standards* for recommended approaches on paints and finishes within various types of project work treatments.

- **Mildew**

Cause of Condition

Mildew is caused by fungi feeding on nutrients contained in the paint film or on dirt adhering to any surface. Because moisture is the single most important factor in its growth, mildew tends to thrive in areas where dampness and lack of sunshine are problems such as window sills, under eaves, around gutters and downspouts, on the north side of buildings, or in shaded areas near shrubbery. It may sometimes be difficult to distinguish mildew from dirt, but there is a simple test to differentiate: if a drop of household bleach is placed on the suspected surface, mildew will immediately turn white whereas dirt will continue to look like dirt.

Recommended Treatment

Because mildew can only exist in shady, warm, moist areas, attention should be given to altering the environment that is conducive to fungal growth. The area in question may be shaded by trees which need to be pruned back to allow sunlight to strike the building; or may lack rain gutters or proper drainage at the base of the building. If the shady or moist conditions can be altered, the mildew is less likely to reappear. A recommend solution for removing mildew consists of one cup non-ammoniated detergent, one quart household bleach, and one gallon water. When the surface is scrubbed with this solution using a medium soft brush, the mildew should disappear; however, for particularly stubborn spots, an additional quart of bleach may be added. After the area is mildew-free, it should then be rinsed with a direct stream of water from the nozzle of a garden hose, and permitted to dry thoroughly. When repainting, specially formulated "mildew-resistant" primer and finish coats should be used.

- **Excessive Chalking**

Cause of Condition

Chalking—or powdering of the paint surface—is caused by the gradual disintegration of the resin in the paint film. (The amount of chalking is determined both by the formulation of the paint and the amount of ultraviolet light to which the paint is exposed.) In moderation, chalking is the ideal way for a paint to "age," because the chalk, when rinsed by rainwater, carries discoloration and dirt away with it and thus provides an ideal surface for repainting. In excess, however, it is not desirable because the chalk can wash down onto a surface of a different color beneath the painted area and cause streaking as well as rapid disintegration of the paint film itself. Also, if a paint contains too much pigment for the amount of binder (as the old white lead carbonate/oil paints often did), excessive chalking can result.

Recommended Treatment

The chalk should be cleaned off with a solution of $\frac{1}{2}$ cup household detergent to one gallon water, using a medium soft bristle brush. After scrubbing to remove the chalk, the surface should be rinsed with a direct stream of water from the nozzle of a garden hose, allowed to dry thoroughly, (but not long enough for the chalking process to recur) and repainted, using a non-chalking paint.

- **Staining**

Cause of Condition

Staining of paint coatings usually results from excess

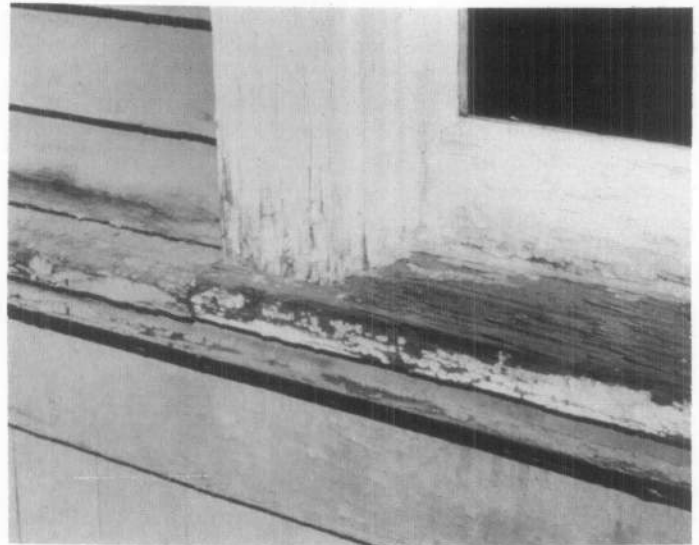


Fig. 4 Paint films wear unevenly depending on exposure and location. Exterior locations which are susceptible to accelerated deterioration are horizontal surfaces such as window sills. These and similar areas will require repainting more often than less vulnerable surfaces. In the case of this window sill where paint has peeled off and adjacent areas have cracked and alligatored, the paint should be totally removed. Prior to repainting, any weathered wood should be rejuvenated using a solution of 3 cups exterior varnish, 1 oz. paraffin wax, and mineral spirits/paint thinner/or turpentine to make 1 gallon. Liberal brush application should be made. This formula was tested over a 20-year period by the U.S. Department of Agriculture's Forest Products Laboratory and proved to be just as effective as water-repellent preservatives containing pentachlorophenol. After the surface has thoroughly dried (2-3 days of warm weather), the treated surface can be painted. A high quality oil-base primer followed by two top coats of a semi-gloss oil-enamel or latex-enamel paint is recommended. Photo: Baird M. Smith, AIA.

moisture reacting with materials within the wood substrate. There are two common types of staining, neither of which requires paint removal. The most prevalent type of stain is due to the oxidation or rusting of iron nails or metal (iron, steel, or copper) anchorage devices. A second type of stain is caused by a chemical reaction between moisture and natural extractives in certain woods (red cedar or redwood) which results in a surface deposit of colored matter. This is most apt to occur in new replacement wood within the first 10-15 years.

Recommended Treatment

In both cases, the source of the stain should first be located and the moisture problem corrected.

When stains are caused by rusting of the heads of nails used to attach shingles or siding to an exterior wall or by rusting or oxidizing iron, steel, or copper anchorage devices adjacent to a painted surface, the metal objects themselves should be hand sanded and coated with a rust-inhibitive primer followed by two finish coats. (Exposed nail heads should ideally be countersunk, spot primed, and the holes filled with a high quality wood filler except where exposure of the nail head was part of the original construction system or the wood is too fragile to withstand the countersinking procedure.)

Discoloration due to color extractives in replacement wood can usually be cleaned with a solution of equal parts denatured alcohol and water. After the affected area

has been rinsed and permitted to dry, a "stain-blocking primer" especially developed for preventing this type of stain should be applied (two primer coats are recommended for severe cases of bleeding prior to the finish coat). Each primer coat should be allowed to dry at least 48 hours.

CLASS II Exterior Surface Conditions Generally Requiring Limited Paint Removal

• Crazing

Cause of Condition

Crazing—fine, jagged interconnected breaks in the top layer of paint—results when paint that is several layers thick becomes excessively hard and brittle with age and is consequently no longer able to expand and contract with the wood in response to changes in temperature and humidity (see figure 5). As the wood swells, the bond between paint layers is broken and hairline cracks appear. Although somewhat more difficult to detect as opposed to other more obvious paint problems, it is well worth the time to scrutinize all surfaces for crazing. If not corrected, exterior moisture will enter the crazed surface, resulting in further swelling of the wood and, eventually, deep cracking and alligatoring, a Class III condition which requires total paint removal.

Recommended Treatment

Crazing can be treated by hand or mechanically sanding the surface, then repainting. Although the hairline cracks may tend to show through the new paint, the surface will be protected against exterior moisture penetration.

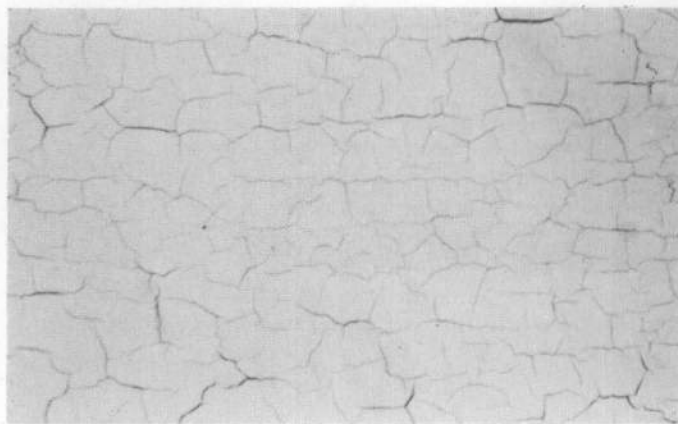


Fig. 5 Crazing—or surface cracking—is an exterior surface condition which can be successfully treated by sanding and painting. Photo: Courtesy, National Decorating Products Association.

• Intercoat Peeling

Cause of Condition

Intercoat peeling can be the result of improper surface preparation prior to the last repainting. This most often occurs in protected areas such as eaves and covered porches because these surfaces do not receive a regular rinsing from rainfall, and salts from air-borne pollutants thus accumulate on the surface. If not cleaned off, the new paint coat will not adhere properly and that layer will peel.

Another common cause of intercoat peeling is incompatibility between paint types (see figure 6). For example, if oil paint is applied over latex paint, peeling of the top

coat can sometimes result since, upon aging, the oil paint becomes harder and less elastic than the latex paint. If latex paint is applied over old, chalking oil paint, peeling can also occur because the latex paint is unable to penetrate the chalky surface and adhere.

Recommended Treatment

First, where salts or impurities have caused the peeling, the affected area should be washed down thoroughly after scraping, then wiped dry. Finally, the surface should be hand or mechanically sanded, then repainted.

Where peeling was the result of using incompatible paints, the peeling top coat should be scraped and hand or mechanically sanded. Application of a high quality oil type exterior primer will provide a surface over which either an oil or a latex topcoat can be successfully used.

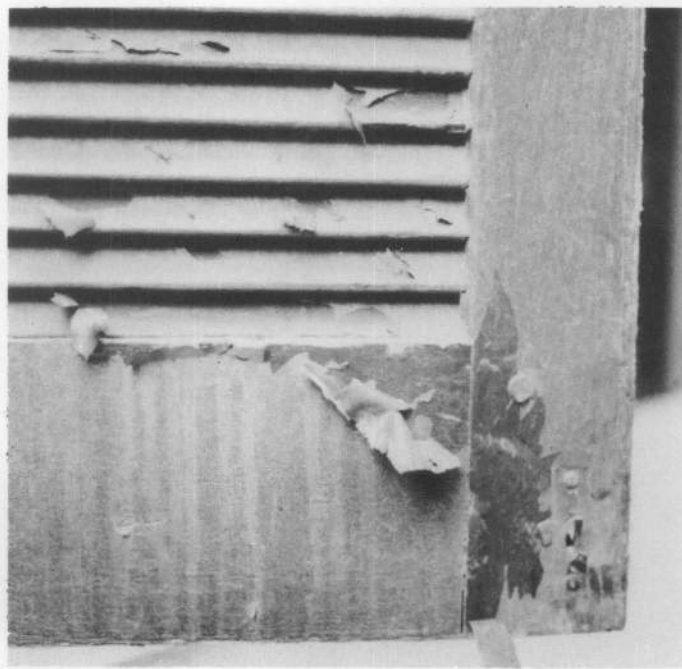


Fig. 6 This is an example of intercoat peeling. A latex top coat was applied directly over old oil paint and, as a result, the latex paint was unable to adhere. If latex is being used over oil, an oil-base primer should be applied first. Although much of the peeling latex paint can be scraped off, in this case, the best solution may be to chemically dip strip the entire shutter to remove all of the paint down to bare wood, rinse thoroughly, then repaint. Photo: Mary L. Oehrlein, AIA.

• Solvent Blistering

Cause of Condition

Solvent blistering, the result of a less common application error, is not caused by moisture, but by the action of ambient heat on paint solvent or thinners in the paint film. If solvent-rich paint is applied in direct sunlight, the top surface can dry too quickly and, as a result, solvents become trapped beneath the dried paint film. When the solvent vaporizes, it forces its way through the paint film, resulting in surface blisters. This problem occurs more often with dark colored paints because darker colors absorb more heat than lighter ones. To distinguish between solvent blistering and blistering caused by moisture, a blister should be cut open. If another layer of paint is visible, then solvent blistering is likely the problem whereas if bare wood is revealed, moisture is probably to blame. Solvent blisters are generally small.

Recommended Treatment

Solvent-blistered areas can be scraped, hand or mechanically sanded to the next sound layer, then repainted. In order to prevent blistering of painted surfaces, paint should not be applied in direct sunlight.

• Wrinkling

Cause of Condition

Another error in application that can easily be avoided is wrinkling (see figure 7). This occurs when the top layer of paint dries before the layer underneath. The top layer of paint actually moves as the paint underneath (a primer, for example) is drying. Specific causes of wrinkling include: (1) applying paint too thick; (2) applying a second coat before the first one dries; (3) inadequate brushing out; and (4) painting in temperatures higher than recommended by the manufacturer.

Recommended Treatment

The wrinkled layer can be removed by scraping followed by hand or mechanical sanding to provide as even a surface as possible, then repainted following manufacturer's application instructions.

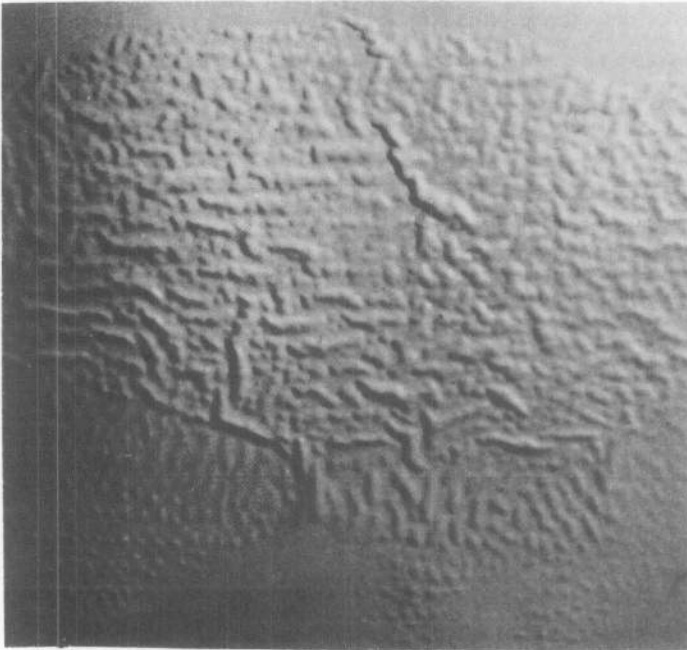


Fig. 7 Wrinkled layers can generally be removed by scraping and sanding as opposed to total paint removal. Following manufacturers' application instructions is the best way to avoid this surface condition. Photo: Courtesy, National Decorating Products Association.

CLASS III Exterior Surface Conditions Generally Requiring Total Paint Removal

If surface conditions are such that the majority of paint will have to be removed prior to repainting, it is suggested that a small sample of intact paint be left in an inconspicuous area either by covering the area with a metal plate, or by marking the area and identifying it in some way. (When repainting does take place, the sample should not be painted over). This will enable future investigators to have a record of the building's paint history.

• Peeling

Cause of Condition

Peeling to bare wood is most often caused by excess interior or exterior moisture that collects behind the paint

film, thus impairing adhesion (see figure 8). Generally beginning as blisters, cracking and peeling occur as moisture causes the wood to swell, breaking the adhesion of the bottom layer.

Recommended Treatment

There is no sense in repainting before dealing with the moisture problems because new paint will simply fail. Therefore, the first step in treating peeling is to locate and remove the source or sources of the moisture, not only because moisture will jeopardize the protective coating of paint but because, if left unattended, it can ultimately cause permanent damage to the wood. Excess interior moisture should be removed from the building through installation of exhaust fans and vents. Exterior moisture should be eliminated by correcting the following conditions prior to repainting: faulty flashing; leaking gutters; defective roof shingles; cracks and holes in siding and trim; deteriorated caulking in joints and seams; and shrubbery growing too close to painted wood. After the moisture problems have been solved, the wood must be permitted to dry out thoroughly. The damaged paint can then be scraped off with a putty knife, hand or mechanically sanded, primed, and repainted.



Fig. 8 Peeling to bare wood—one of the most common types of paint failure—is usually caused by an interior or exterior moisture problem. Photo: Anne E. Grimmer.

• Cracking/Alligatoring

Cause of Condition

Cracking and alligatoring are advanced stages of crazing (see figure 9). Once the bond between layers has been broken due to intercoat paint failure, exterior moisture is able to penetrate the surface cracks, causing the wood to swell and deeper cracking to take place. This process continues until cracking, which forms parallel to grain, extends to bare wood. Ultimately, the cracking becomes an overall pattern of horizontal and vertical breaks in the paint layers that looks like reptile skin; hence, "alligatoring." In advanced stages of cracking and alligatoring, the surfaces will also flake badly.

Recommended Treatment

If cracking and alligatoring are present only in the top layers they can probably be scraped, hand or mechanically sanded to the next sound layer, then repainted. However, if cracking and/or alligatoring have progressed to

bare wood and the paint has begun to flake, it will need to be totally removed. Methods include scraping or paint removal with the electric heat plate, electric heat gun, or chemical strippers, depending on the particular area involved. Bare wood should be primed within 48 hours, then repainted.

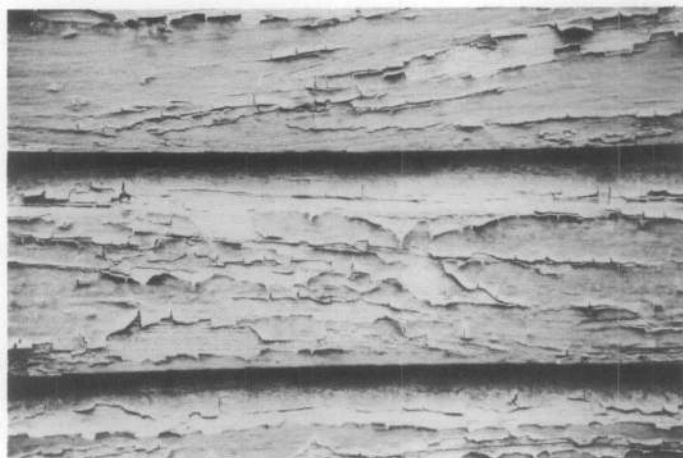


Fig. 9 Cracking, alligatoring, and flaking are evidence of long-term neglect of painted surfaces. The remaining paint on the clapboard shown here can be removed with an electric heat plate and wide-bladed scraper. In addition, unsound wood should be replaced and moisture problems corrected before primer and top coats of paint are applied. Photo: David W. Look, AIA.

Selecting the Appropriate/Safest Method to Remove Paint

After having presented the "hierarchy" of exterior paint surface conditions—from a mild condition such as mildew which simply requires cleaning prior to repainting to serious conditions such as peeling and alligatoring which require total paint removal—one important thought bears repeating: if a paint problem has been identified that warrants either limited or total paint removal, the gentlest method possible for the particular wooden element of the historic building should be selected from the many available methods.

The treatments recommended—based upon field testing as well as onsite monitoring of Department of Interior grant-in-aid and certification of rehabilitation projects—are therefore those which take three over-riding issues into consideration (1) the continued protection and preservation of the historic exterior woodwork; (2) the retention of the sequence of historic paint layers; and (3) the health and safety of those individuals performing the paint removal. By applying these criteria, it will be seen that no paint removal method is without its drawbacks and all recommendations are qualified in varying degrees.

Methods for Removing Paint

After a particular exterior paint surface condition has been identified, the next step in planning for repainting—if paint removal is required—is selecting an appropriate method for such removal.

The method or methods selected should be suitable for the specific paint problem as well as the particular wooden element of the building. Methods for paint removal can be divided into three categories (frequently, however, a combination of the three methods is used).

Each method is defined below, then discussed further and specific recommendations made:

Abrasive—"Abrading" the painted surface by manual and/or mechanical means such as scraping and sanding. Generally used for surface preparation and limited paint removal.

Thermal—Softening and raising the paint layers by applying heat followed by scraping and sanding. Generally used for total paint removal.

Chemical—Softening of the paint layers with chemical strippers followed by scraping and sanding. Generally used for total paint removal.

• Abrasive Methods (Manual)

If conditions have been identified that require limited paint removal such as crazing, intercoat peeling, solvent blistering, and wrinkling, scraping and hand sanding should be the first methods employed before using mechanical means. Even in the case of more serious conditions such as peeling—where the damaged paint is weak and already sufficiently loosened from the wood surface—scraping and hand sanding may be all that is needed prior to repainting.

Recommended Abrasive Methods (Manual)

Putty Knife/Paint Scraper: Scraping is usually accomplished with either a putty knife or a paint scraper, or both. Putty knives range in width from one to six inches and have a beveled edge. A putty knife is used in a pushing motion going under the paint and working from an area of loose paint toward the edge where the paint is still firmly adhered and, in effect, "beveling" the remaining layers so that as smooth a transition as possible is made between damaged and undamaged areas (see figure 10).

Paint scrapers are commonly available in 1½, 2½, and 3½ inch widths and have replaceable blades. In addition, profiled scrapers can be made specifically for use on moldings. As opposed to the putty knife, the paint scraper is used in a pulling motion and works by raking the damaged areas of paint away.

The obvious goal in using the putty knife or the paint scraper is to selectively remove the affected layer or layers of paint; however, both of these tools, particularly the paint scraper with its hooked edge, must be used with care to properly prepare the surface and to avoid gouging the wood.

Sandpaper/Sanding Block/Sanding sponge: After manually removing the damaged layer or layers by scraping, the uneven surface (due to the almost inevitable removal of varying numbers of paint layers in a given area) will need to be smoothed or "feathered out" prior to repainting. As stated before, hand sanding, as opposed to harsher mechanical sanding, is recommended if the area is relatively limited. A coarse grit, open-coat flint sandpaper—the least expensive kind—is useful for this purpose because, as the sandpaper clogs with paint it must be discarded and this process repeated until all layers adhere uniformly.

Blocks made of wood or hard rubber and covered with sandpaper are useful for handsanding flat surfaces. Sanding sponges—rectangular sponges with an abrasive aggregate on their surfaces—are also available for detail work that requires reaching into grooves because the sponge easily conforms to curves and irregular surfaces. All sanding should be done with the grain.

Summary of Abrasive Methods (Manual)

Recommended: Putty knife, paint scraper, sandpaper, sanding block, sanding sponge.

Applicable areas of building: All areas.

For use on: Class I, Class II, and Class III conditions.

Health/Safety factors: Take precautions against lead dust, eye damage; dispose of lead paint residue properly.

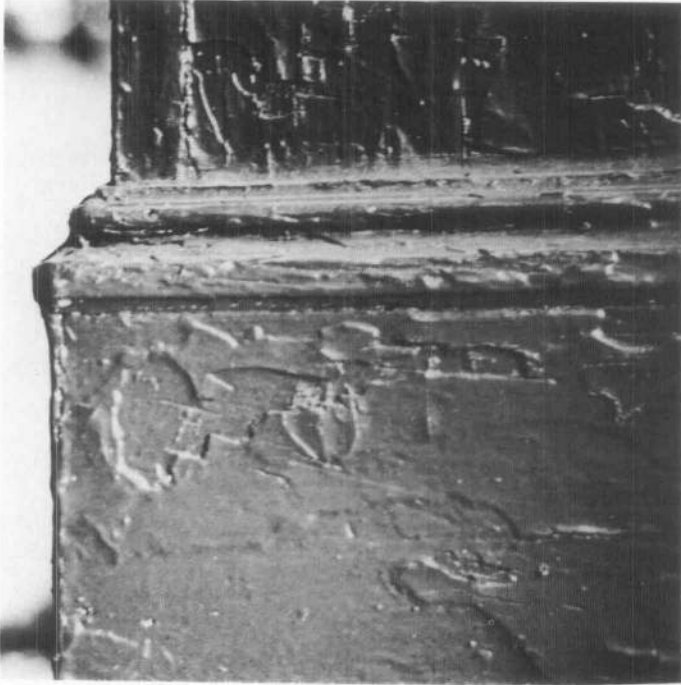


Fig. 10 An excellent example of inadequate scraping before repainting, the problems here are far more than cosmetic. This improperly prepared surface will permit moisture to get behind the paint film which, in turn, will result in chipping and peeling. Photo: Baird M. Smith, AIA.

• Abrasive Methods (Mechanical)

If hand sanding for purposes of surface preparation has not been productive or if the affected area is too large to consider hand sanding by itself, mechanical abrasive methods, i.e., power-operated tools may need to be employed; however, it should be noted that the majority of tools available for paint removal can cause damage to fragile wood and must be used with great care.

Recommended Abrasive Methods (Mechanical)

Orbital sander: Designed as a finishing or smoothing tool—not for the removal of multiple layers of paint—the orbital sander is thus recommended when limited paint removal is required prior to repainting. Because it sands in a small diameter circular motion (some models can also be switched to a back-and-forth vibrating action), this tool is particularly effective for “feathering” areas where paint has first been scraped (see figure 11). The abrasive surface varies from about 3×7 inches to 4×9 inches and sandpaper is attached either by clamps or sliding clips. A medium grit, open-coat aluminum oxide sandpaper should be used; fine sandpaper clogs up so quickly that it is ineffective for smoothing paint.

Belt sander: A second type of power tool—the belt sander—can also be used for removing limited layers of paint but,

in this case, the abrasive surface is a continuous belt of sandpaper that travels at high speeds and consequently offers much less control than the orbital sander. Because of the potential for more damage to the paint or the wood, use of the belt sander (also with a medium grit sandpaper) should be limited to flat surfaces and only skilled operators should be permitted to operate it within a historic preservation project.



Fig. 11 The orbital sander can be used for limited paint removal, i.e., for smoothing flat surfaces after the majority of deteriorated paint has already been scraped off. Photo: Charles E. Fisher, III.

Not Recommended

Rotary Drill Attachments: Rotary drill attachments such as the rotary sanding disc and the rotary wire stripper should be avoided. The disc sander—usually a disc of sandpaper about 5 inches in diameter secured to a rubber based attachment which is in turn connected to an electric drill or other motorized housing—can easily leave visible circular depressions in the wood which are difficult to hide, even with repainting. The rotary wire stripper—clusters of metals wires similarly attached to an electric drill-type unit—can actually shred a wooden surface and is thus to be used exclusively for removing corrosion and paint from metals.

Waterblasting: Waterblasting above 600 p.s.i. to remove paint is not recommended because it can force water into the woodwork rather than cleaning loose paint and grime from the surface; at worst, high pressure waterblasting causes the water to penetrate exterior sheathing and damages interior finishes. A detergent solution, a medium soft bristle brush, and a garden hose for purposes of rinsing, is the gentlest method involving water and is recommended when cleaning exterior surfaces prior to repainting.

Sandblasting: Finally—and undoubtedly most vehemently “not recommended”—sandblasting painted exterior woodwork will indeed remove paint, but at the same time can scar wooden elements beyond recognition. As with rotary wire strippers, sandblasting erodes the soft porous fibers (spring wood) faster than the hard, dense fibers (summer wood), leaving a pitted surface with ridges and valleys. Sandblasting will also erode projecting areas of carvings and moldings before it removes paint from concave areas (see figure 12). Hence, this abrasive method is potentially the most damaging of all possibilities, even if a contractor promises that blast pressure can be controlled so that the paint is removed without harming the historic exterior woodwork. (For Additional Information, See Preservation Briefs 6, “Dangers of Abrasive Cleaning to Historic Buildings”.)



Fig. 12 Sandblasting has permanently damaged this ornamental bracket. Even paint will not be able to hide the deep erosion of the wood. Photo: David W. Look, AIA.

Summary of Abrasive Methods (Mechanical)

Recommended: Orbital sander, belt sander (skilled operator only).

Applicable areas of building: Flat surfaces, i.e., siding, eaves, doors, window sills.

For use on: Class II and Class III conditions.

Health/Safety factors: Take precautions against lead dust and eye damage; dispose of lead paint residue properly.

Not Recommended: Rotary drill attachments, high pressure waterblasting, sandblasting.

• Thermal Methods

Where exterior surface conditions have been identified that warrant total paint removal such as peeling, cracking, or alligatoring, two thermal devices—the electric heat plate and the electric heat gun—have proven to be quite successful for use on different wooden elements of the historic building. One thermal method—the blow torch—is not recommended because it can scorch the wood or even burn the building down!

Recommended Thermal Methods

Electric heat plate: The electric heat plate (see figure 13) operates between 500 and 800 degrees Fahrenheit (not hot enough to vaporize lead paint), using about 15 amps of power. The plate is held close to the painted exterior surface until the layers of paint begin to soften and blister, then moved to an adjacent location on the wood while the softened paint is scraped off with a putty knife (it should be noted that the heat plate is most successful when the paint is very thick!). With practice, the operator can successfully move the heat plate evenly across a flat surface such as wooden siding or a window sill or door in a continuous motion, thus lessening the risk of scorching the wood in an attempt to reheat the edge of the paint sufficiently for effective removal. Since the electric heat plate's coil is “red hot,” extreme caution should be taken to avoid igniting clothing or burning the skin. If an extension cord is used, it should be a heavy-duty cord (with 3-prong grounded plugs). A heat plate could overload a circuit or, even worse, cause an electrical fire; therefore, it is recommended that this implement be used with a single circuit and that a fire extinguisher always be kept close at hand.



Fig. 13 The electric heat plate (with paint scraper) is particularly useful for removing paint down to bare wood on flat surfaces such as doors, window frames, and siding. After scraping, some light sanding will probably be necessary to smooth the surface prior to application of primer and top coats. Photo: David W. Look, AIA.

Electric heat gun: The electric heat gun (electric hot-air gun) looks like a hand-held hairdryer with a heavy-duty metal case (see figure 14). It has an electrical resistance coil that typically heats between 500 and 750 degrees Fahrenheit and, again, uses about 15 amps of power which requires a heavy-duty extension cord. There are some heat guns that operate at higher temperatures but they should not be purchased for removing old paint

because of the danger of lead paint vapors. The temperature is controlled by a vent on the side of the heat gun. When the vent is closed, the heat increases. A fan forces a stream of hot air against the painted woodwork, causing a blister to form. At that point, the softened paint can be peeled back with a putty knife. It can be used to best advantage when a paneled door was originally varnished, then painted a number of times. In this case, the paint will come off quite easily, often leaving an almost pristine varnished surface behind. Like the heat plate, the heat gun works best on a heavy paint build-up. (It is, however, not very successful on only one or two layers of paint or on surfaces that have only been varnished. The varnish simply becomes sticky and the wood scorches.)

Although the heat gun is heavier and more tiring to use than the heat plate, it is particularly effective for removing paint from detail work because the nozzle can be directed at curved and intricate surfaces. Its use is thus more limited than the heat plate, and most successfully used in conjunction *with* the heat plate. For example, it takes about two to three hours to strip a paneled door with a heat gun, but if used in combination with a heat plate for the large, flat area, the time can usually be cut in half. Although a heat gun seldom scorches wood, it can cause fires (like the blow torch) if aimed at the dusty cavity between the exterior sheathing and siding and interior lath and plaster. A fire may smolder for hours before flames break through to the surface. Therefore, this thermal device is best suited for use on solid decorative elements, such as molding, balusters, fretwork, or "gingerbread."



Fig. 14 The nozzle on the electric heat gun permits hot air to be aimed into cavities on solid decorative elements such as this applied column. After the paint has been sufficiently softened, it can be removed with a profiled scraper. Photo: Charles E. Fisher, III.

Not Recommended

Blow Torch: Blow torches, such as hand-held propane or butane torches, were widely used in the past for paint removal because other thermal devices were not available. With this technique, the flame is directed toward the paint until it begins to bubble and loosen from the surface. Then the paint is scraped off with a putty knife. Although this is a relatively fast process, at temperatures between 3200 and 3800 degrees Fahrenheit the open flame is not only capable of burning a careless operator and causing severe damage to eyes or skin, it can easily scorch or ignite the wood. The other fire hazard is more insidious. Most frame buildings have an air space between the exterior sheathing and siding and interior lath and plaster. This cavity usually has an accumulation of dust which is also easily ignited by the open flame of a blow torch. Finally, lead-base paints will vaporize at high temperatures, releasing toxic fumes that can be unknowingly inhaled. Therefore, because both the heat plate and the heat gun are generally safer to use—that is, the risks are much more controllable—the blow torch should definitely be avoided!

Summary of Thermal Methods

Recommended: Electric heat plate, electric heat gun.

Applicable areas of building: Electric heat plate—flat surfaces such as siding, eaves, sash, sills, doors. Electric heat gun—solid decorative molding, balusters, fretwork, or "gingerbread."

For use on: Class III conditions.

Health/Safety factors: Take precautions against eye damage and fire. Dispose of lead paint residue properly.

Not Recommended: Blow torch.

• Chemical Methods

With the availability of effective thermal methods for total paint removal, the need for chemical methods—in the context of preparing historic exterior woodwork for repainting—becomes quite limited. Solvent-base or caustic strippers may, however, play a supplemental role in a number of situations, including:

- Removing paint residue from intricate decorative features, or in cracks or hard to reach areas if a heat gun has not been completely effective;
- Removing paint on window muntins because heat devices can easily break the glass;
- Removing varnish on exterior doors after all layers of paint have been removed by a heat plate/heat gun if the original varnish finish is being restored;
- Removing paint from detachable wooden elements such as exterior shutters, balusters, columns, and doors by dip-stripping when other methods are too laborious.

Recommended Chemical Methods (Use With Extreme Caution)

Because all chemical paint removers can involve potential health and safety hazards, no wholehearted recommendations can be made from that standpoint. Commonly known as "paint removers" or "strippers," both solvent-base or caustic products are commercially available that, when poured, brushed, or sprayed on painted exterior woodwork are capable of softening several layers of paint at a time so that the resulting "sludge"—which should be remembered is nothing less than the sequence of historic

paint layers—can be removed with a putty knife. Detachable wood elements such as exterior shutters can also be “dip-stripped.”

Solvent-base Strippers: The formulas tend to vary, but generally consist of combinations of organic solvents such as methylene chloride, isopropanol, toluol, xylol, and methanol; thickeners such as methyl cellulose; and various additives such as paraffin wax used to prevent the volatile solvents from evaporating before they have time to soak through multiple layers of paint. Thus, while some solvent-base strippers are quite thin and therefore unsuitable for use on vertical surfaces, others, called “semi-paste” strippers, are formulated for use on vertical surfaces or the underside of horizontal surfaces.

However, whether liquid or semi-paste, there are two important points to stress when using any solvent-base stripper: First, the vapors from the organic chemicals can be highly toxic if inhaled; skin contact is equally dangerous because the solvents can be absorbed; second, many solvent-base strippers are flammable. Even though application out-of-doors may somewhat mitigate health and safety hazards, a respirator with special filters for organic solvents is recommended and, of course, solvent-base strippers should never be used around open flames, lighted cigarettes, or with steel wool around electrical outlets.

Although appearing to be the simplest for exterior use, a particular type of solvent-base stripper needs to be mentioned here because it can actually cause the most problems. Known as “water-rinsable,” such products have a high proportion of methylene chloride together with emulsifiers. Although the dissolved paint can be rinsed off with water with a minimum of scraping, this ultimately creates more of a problem in cleaning up and properly disposing of the sludge. In addition, these strippers can leave a gummy residue on the wood that requires removal with solvents. Finally, water-rinsable strippers tend to raise the grain of the wood more than regular strippers.

On balance, then, the regular strippers would seem to work just as well for exterior purposes and are perhaps even better from the standpoint of proper lead sludge disposal because they must be hand scraped as opposed to rinsed off (a coffee-can with a wire stretched across the top is one effective way to collect the sludge; when the putty knife is run across the wire, the sludge simply falls into the can. Then, when the can is filled, the wire is removed, the can capped, and the lead paint sludge disposed of according to local health regulations).

Caustic Strippers: Until the advent of solvent-base strippers, caustic strippers were used exclusively when a chemical method was deemed appropriate for total paint removal prior to repainting or refinishing. Now, it is more difficult to find commercially prepared caustic solutions in hardware and paint stores for home-owner use with the exception of lye (caustic soda) because solvent-base strippers packaged in small quantities tend to dominate the market.

Most commercial dip stripping companies, however, continue to use variations of the caustic bath process because it is still the cheapest method available for removing paint. Generally, dip stripping should be left to professional companies because caustic solutions can dissolve skin and permanently damage eyes as well as present serious disposal problems in large quantities.

If exterior shutters or other detachable elements are be-

ing sent out⁶ for stripping in a caustic solution, it is wise to see samples of the company's finished work. While some companies do a first-rate job, others can leave a residue of paint in carvings and grooves. Wooden elements may also be soaked too long so that the wood grain is raised and roughened, requiring extensive hand sanding later. In addition, assurances should be given by these companies that caustic paint removers will be neutralized with a mild acid solution or at least thoroughly rinsed with water after dipping (a caustic residue makes the wood feel slippery). If this is not done, the lye residue will cause new paint to fail.

Summary of Chemical Methods

Recommended, with extreme caution: Solvent-base strippers, caustic strippers.

Applicable areas of buildings: decorative features, window muntins, doors, exterior shutters, columns, balusters, and railings.

For use on: Class III Conditions.

Health/Safety factors: Take precautions against inhaling toxic vapors; fire; eye damage; and chemical poisoning from skin contact. Dispose of lead residue properly

General Paint Type Recommendations

Based on the assumption that the exterior wood has been painted with oil paint many times in the past and the existing top coat is therefore also an oil paint,* it is recommended that for CLASS I and CLASS II paint surface conditions, a top coat of high quality oil paint be applied when repainting. The reason for recommending oil rather than latex paints is that a coat of latex paint applied directly over old oil paint is more apt to fail. The considerations are twofold. First, because oil paints continue to harden with age, the old surface is sensitive to the added stress of shrinkage which occurs as a new coat of paint dries. Oil paints shrink less upon drying than latex paints and thus do not have as great a tendency to pull the old paint loose. Second, when exterior oil paints age, the binder releases pigment particles, causing a chalky surface. Although for best results, the chalk (or dirt, etc.) should *always* be cleaned off prior to repainting, a coat of new oil paint is more able to penetrate a chalky residue and adhere than is latex paint. Therefore, unless it is possible to thoroughly clean a heavy chalked surface, oil paints—on balance—give better adhesion.

If however, a latex top coat is going to be applied over several layers of old oil paint, an oil primer should be applied first (the oil primer creates a flat, porous surface to which the latex can adhere). After the primer has thoroughly dried, a latex top coat may be applied. In the long run, changing paint types is more time consuming and expensive. An application of a new oil-type top coat on the old oil paint is, thus, the preferred course of action.

⁶ Marking the original location of the shutter by number (either by stamping numbers into the end grain with metal numeral dies or cutting numbers into the end with a pen knife) will minimize difficulties when rehanging them.

* If the top coat is latex paint (when viewed by the naked eye or, preferably, with a magnifying glass, it looks like a series of tiny craters) it may either be repainted with new latex paint or with oil paint. Normal surface preparation should precede any repainting.

If **CLASS III** conditions have necessitated total paint removal, there are two options, both of which assure protection of the exterior wood: (1) an oil primer may be applied followed by an oil-type top coat, preferably by the same manufacturer; or (2) an oil primer may be applied followed by a latex top coat, again using the same brand of paint. It should also be noted that primers were never intended to withstand the effects of weathering; therefore, the top coat should be applied as soon as possible after the primer has dried.

Conclusion

The recommendations outlined in this Brief are cautious because at present there is no completely safe and effective method of removing old paint from exterior woodwork. This has necessarily eliminated descriptions of several methods still in a developmental or experimental stage, which can therefore neither be recommended nor precluded from future recommendation. With the ever-increasing number of buildings being rehabilitated, however, paint removal technology should be stimulated and, in consequence, existing methods refined and new methods developed which will respect both the historic wood and the health and safety of the operator.

Special thanks go to Baird M. Smith, AIA (formerly Chief, Preservation Technology Branch, TPS) for providing general direction in the development of the manuscript. In addition, the following individuals are to be thanked for their contributions as technical experts in the field: Royal T. Brown, National Paint and Coatings Association, Washington, D.C.; Dr. Judith E. Selwyn, Preservation Technology Associates, Boston, Massachusetts; and Dennis R. Vacca, Pratt & Lambert Co., Carlstadt, New Jersey. Finally, thanks go to several National Park Service staff members whose valuable comments were incorporated into the text and who contributed to the production of the brief: James A. Caufield, Anne E. Grimmer, Jean E. Travers, David G. Battle, Sharon C. Park, AIA, Charles E. Fisher III, Sara K. Blumenthal, and Martha A. Gutrick.

Reading List

- Batcheler, Penelope Hartshorne, "Paint Color Research and Restoration." *Technical Leaflet 15*. Nashville: American Association for State and Local History (undated).
- "Danger: Restoration May Be Hazardous to Your Health." *The Old House Journal*. Vol. 4, No. 5 (May 1976), pp. 9-11.
- Gola, Edward F. "Avoiding Mistakes in Exterior Painting." *The Old House Journal*. Vol. 4, No. 6 (June 1976), pp. 1, 4-5.
- "How to Assure a Satisfactory Paint Job." *Scientific Section: Circular 784*. Washington, DC: National Paint, Varnish and Lacquer Association (undated).
- Labine, Clem. "Selecting the Best Exterior Paint." *The Old House Journal*. Vol. 4, No. 7 (July 1976), pp. 1, 10-11.
- Morton, W. Brown III and Hume, Gary L. *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Historic Preservation Projects with Guidelines for Applying the Standards*. Washington, DC: Department of Interior, 1979.
- Paint Problem Solver*. St. Louis: National Decorating Products Association, 1980.
- "Special Issue: Exterior Painting." *The Old House Journal*. Vol. 4, No. 4 (April 1981), pp. 71-94.
- Thorsen, John W. "Hazardous Waste: What is it? How to Handle it." *Professional Decorating & Coating Action*. Vol. 43, No. 4 (September 1981), pp. 4-5.

This publication has been prepared pursuant to The Economic Recovery Tax Act of 1981, which directs the Secretary of the Interior to certify rehabilitations of historic buildings that are consistent with their historic character; the advice and guidance in this brief will assist property owners in complying with the requirements of this law.

Preservation Briefs 10 has been developed under the technical editorship of Lee H. Nelson, AIA, Chief, Preservation Assistance Division, National Park Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, Washington, D.C. 20240. Comments on the usefulness of this information are welcomed and can be sent to Mr. Nelson at the above address.

This publication is not copyrighted and can be reproduced without penalty. Normal procedures for credit to the authors and the National Park Service are appreciated.

September 1982

01 10 00 SUMMARY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Project information.
 - 2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
 - 3. Access to site.
 - 4. Coordination with occupants.
 - 5. Work restrictions.
 - 6. Specification and Drawing conventions.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.
- C. Applicable Building Codes and Standards:
 - 1. 2018 International Building Code
 - 2. 2018 International Existing Building Code
 - 3. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring and Reconstructing Historic Buildings

1.3 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: **Douglas County Community Services Dangberg Ranch Exterior Restoration**
 - 1. Project Location: 1450 Highway 88, Minden, Nevada 89423
- B. Owner: Douglas County Community Services.
 - 1. Owner's Representative/Project Manager Scott McCullough:
 - a. Phone: (775) 782-9829
 - b. E-mail: smccullough@douglasnv.us
 - Architect: Paul Cavin Architect LLC, 1575 Delucchi Lane Suite #120 Reno, Nevada 89502
 - 2. Project Architect: Paul Cavin, AIA
 - a. Mobile: (775) 842-0261
 - b. Office: (775) 384-6141
 - c. E-mail: paul@paulcavindesign.com

1.4 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and consists of the following:

1. See Project Manual and Drawings.

B. Type of Contract:

1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

1.5 ACCESS TO SITE

A. General: Contractor shall have limited use of Project site for construction operations as indicated on Drawings by the Contract limits and as indicated by requirements of this Section.

B. Use of Building and Site: Limit use of Project site to areas within the Contract limits indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site or building beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.

1. Driveways, Walkways and Entrances: Keep driveways parking garage, loading areas, and entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner, Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or for storage of materials.

a. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances by construction operations.

b. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.

C. Condition of Existing Building: Maintain portions of existing building affected by construction operations in a weathertight condition throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

D. Condition of Existing Grounds: Maintain portions of existing grounds, landscaping, and hardscaping affected by construction operations throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

1.6 COORDINATION WITH OCCUPANTS

A. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the premises during entire construction period, with the exception of areas under construction. Cooperate with Owner during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate Owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with Owner's operations. Maintain existing exits unless otherwise indicated. It is anticipated that the entire building will be vacant during the construction period. However, building tenants may occupy spaces within the building for brief periods of time in order to retrieve information and/or equipment.

1. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct walkways, corridors, or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Provide not less than 48 hours' notice to Owner of activities that will affect Owner's operations.

1.7 WORK RESTRICTIONS

A. Work Restrictions, General: Comply with restrictions on construction operations.

1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets and with other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work in the existing building to normal business working hours of 7:00 a.m. to 5:30 p.m., Monday through Friday, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Weekend Hours: 7:00 a.m. to 5:30 p.m.
 2. Hours for Utility Shutdowns: Notify Owner's Project Manager 72 hours before any utility shutdowns.
 3. Hours for noisy activity: 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. coordinate with building occupants and ECSD Project Manager.
- C. Restricted Substances: Use of tobacco products and other controlled substances within the existing building and on the Project site is not permitted.

1.8 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
 2. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- C. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations published as part of the U.S. National CAD Standard and scheduled on Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 10 00

01 23 00 ALTERNATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if the Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
 - 2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to the Contract Sum to incorporate alternates into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
 - 1. Include as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
- B. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other work of the Contract.
- C. Alternates will be additive and accepted in order with alternate number 1 being first.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

- A. Alternate Number 1 through 6:
 - 1. Alternate Number 1 shall consist of prep / staining of existing roofing shingles of the Stone Cellar, Laundry House, Carriage House, Bunk House and the Kennel as shown on the drawings.

2. Alternate Number 2 shall consist of exterior cleaning, building repairs and prep / painting of the Laundry House as shown on the drawings.
3. Alternate Number 3 shall consist of exterior cleaning, building repairs and prep / painting of the Bunkhouse as shown on the drawings.
4. Alternate Number 4 shall consist of exterior cleaning, building repairs and prep / painting of the Stone House as shown on the drawings.
5. Alternate Number 5 shall consist of exterior cleaning, building repairs and prep / painting of the Carriage House and Garage as shown on the drawings.
6. Alternate Number 6 shall consist of exterior cleaning, building repairs and prep / painting of the Kennel as shown on the drawings.

END OF SECTION 01 23 00

01 25 00 SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
 - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
 - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.
 - 3. Substitution procedures are further defined in the Nevada State Public Works Division General Conditions of the Contract section 2.5.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use provided with in this specification section.
 - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
 - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.
 - b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design

- characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
- d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
 - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
 - g. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
 - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
 - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES.
 - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
 - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for materials not identified as the Basis of Design: Requests for substitutions must be submitted to the Owner and Architect within 30 days after the award of Contract and/or Notice to Proceed. Thereafter, substitutions will be considered only in cases of documented product unavailability or other conditions beyond the control and without the fault of the Contractor, or in special circumstances when allowed by the Owner and Architect.

1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 - c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
 - d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 - g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 - h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- B. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 - c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
 - d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 - g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 - h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- C. Substitutions for Convenience: Not allowed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 25 00

REQUEST FOR SUBSTITUTION FORM

Submittal is to be filled out in its entirety. For items which do not apply, mark "N/A." Failure to complete the entire form may be cause for rejection.

Date of Request: _____

Project Name: _____

General Contractor: _____

Contractor Requesting Substitution: _____

1. Give complete name of item, manufacturer, model number, etc. to specifically identify the below listed items from similar items by either same or other manufacturers:

Specified Item: _____

Requested Substitution: _____

2. All applicable items in the following list of specification designations must be completely filled in as a basis to demonstrate equality (or non-equality) of the requested substitute vs. the specified item (Add any information necessary to prove equality).

Designation	Specified Item	Requested Substitution
Comply with (list numbers):		
ASTM Publication Number:	_____	_____
Federal Specification Number:	_____	_____
Military Specification Number:	_____	_____
ICBO Report Number:	_____	_____
UL Assembly Number:	_____	_____
NFPA Publication Number:	_____	_____
ANSI Standard Number:	_____	_____
Gypsum Association Number:	_____	_____

Size (state units of measure and identify as nominal, exact, etc.) dimensions:

Length:	<hr/>	<hr/>
Height:	<hr/>	<hr/>
Width:	<hr/>	<hr/>
Depth:	<hr/>	<hr/>
Diameter:	<hr/>	<hr/>
Diameter:	<hr/>	<hr/>
Area:	<hr/>	<hr/>
Volume:	<hr/>	<hr/>
	<hr/>	<hr/>

Construction and Material Used (If metal, indicate type, if wood, indicate species):

Metal:	<hr/>	<hr/>
Wood:	<hr/>	<hr/>
Plastic:	<hr/>	<hr/>
Gauge, weight, thickness, etc:	<hr/>	<hr/>
Method of connection:	<hr/>	<hr/>
Method of attachment to structure:	<hr/>	<hr/>
	<hr/>	<hr/>

Color and Finish:

<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>

Special Features:

<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>

Guarantee/Warranty: Yes: _____ No: _____

If yes, state length of guarantee/warranty.

Attach guarantee/warranty information.

For each item above in Number 2, which indicates that the requested substitution is not the same as the specified item, make a brief but concise statement in Number 5 below expressing why you believe the requested substitution is equal to or superior to the specified item. Clearly identify which line item in Number 2 is being discussed in each statement in Number 5.

3. Details of Construction and/or Installation.

Does the requested substitute comply with method of construction and materials indicated on the Contract Documents?

Yes: _____ No: _____

Does the requested substitute comply with method of attachment to and compatibility with adjacent materials indicated on the Contract Documents?

Yes: _____ No: _____

If either of the above is answered NO, is there submitted herewith detailed drawings fully explaining the proposed method of construction and materials for the substitute item/ assembly and showing its method of attachment to and compatibility with adjacent materials?

Yes: _____ No: _____

Note: If the Substitution Request does not contain details, drawings, assembly, and installation this request will be rejected.

4. Affect on Contract Cost and/or Contract Time.

If approved, will this Request for Substitution affect the Contract Cost?

Yes: _____ No: _____

If yes, state amount of cost: added: _____ deducted: _____

If approved, will this Request for Substitution affect the Contract Time?

Yes: _____ No: _____

If yes, state amount of time: added _____ deducted: _____

5. State below any other reasons for making this Request for Substitution, including any advantages for either the Owner, Contractor, Subcontractor, etc. (attach additional information as necessary).

6. Certification:

In making this Request for Substitution, the undersigned hereby certifies that to the best of their knowledge and information all data listed hereinabove is correct and factual. The undersigned further certifies that they have read and understand all aspects of the Summary of Work, included in the Project Manual, and will fully comply with the contents of the Contract Documents regarding the substitution of materials.

Name of Firm making Request (Contractor, Subcontractor, Manufacturer, Supplier, etc.): _____

By: _____
Signature

Printed Name and Title

Date

7. Concurrence (To be completed by General Contractor, unless above certification is by General Contractor).

I, _____,
The General Contractor for this project, have reviewed this Request for Substitution and concur with all the information contained herein and also make the same certifications as executed by the firm initiating this Request for Substitution.

By: _____
Signature

Printed Name and Title

Date

01 26 00 CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications procedures.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.

1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710, "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."

1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: The Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
 - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
 - 2. Within time specified in the Proposal Request after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
 - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
 - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
 - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
 - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
 - e. Quotation Form: Use forms acceptable to the Owner and Architect.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to the Architect.

1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
7. Proposal Request Form: Use forms acceptable to the Owner and Architect.

1.5 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Changes Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on a SPWD Change Order form.

1.6 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714 Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 26 00

01 29 00 PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 26 00 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract
 - 2. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 3. Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Submittal Schedule.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule. Comply with Nevada State Public Works Division General Conditions of the Contract, Section 7.1.1.
 - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:
 - a. Application for Payment forms with continuation sheets.
 - b. Submittal schedule.
 - c. Items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Owner and Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than 14 days after issuance of the Notice to Proceed.
 - 3. Sub-schedules for Separate Elements of Work: Where the Contractor's construction schedule defines separate elements of the Work, provide sub-schedules showing values coordinated with each element.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one-line item for each Specification Section.

1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
 - a. Project name and location.
 - b. Name of Architect.
 - c. Contractor's name and address.
 - d. Date of submittal.
2. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
 - a. Related Specification Section or Division.
 - b. Description of the Work.
 - c. Name of subcontractor.
 - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
 - e. Name of supplier.
 - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
 - g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent.
 - 1) Labor.
 - 2) Materials.
 - 3) Equipment.
3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with Project Manual table of contents. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
4. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
5. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
 - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site. If required, include evidence of insurance.
6. Provide separate line items in the schedule of values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
7. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
8. Purchase Contracts: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each purchase contract. Show line-item value of purchase contract. Indicate owner payments or deposits, if any, and balance to be paid by Contractor.
9. Each item in the schedule of values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.
 - a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the schedule of values or distributed as general overhead expense, at Contractor's option.
10. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the schedule of values before the next Application for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- B. Comply with Nevada State Public Works Division General Conditions of the Contract, Section 7.2.
- C. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
 - 1. Submit draft copy of Application for Payment seven days prior to due date for review by Owner and Architect.
- D. Application for Payment Forms: Use forms provided by Owner for Applications for Payment.
- E. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Owner and/or Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
 - 1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
 - 2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
 - 3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
 - 4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
- F. Transmittal: Submit three signed original copies of each Application for Payment to Owner and Architect.
 - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 29 00

01 31 00 PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. General coordination procedures.
 - 2. Coordination drawings.
 - 3. Requests for Information (RFIs).
 - 4. Project meetings.
- B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility are assigned to a specific contractor.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule
 - 2. Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
 - 3. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RFI (Request for Information): Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
 - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
 - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
 - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home, office, and

cellular telephone numbers and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.

1. Post copies of list in project meeting room, in temporary field office, and by each temporary telephone. Keep list current at all times.

1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
 1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
 2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
 5. Progress meetings.
 6. Pre-installation conferences.
 7. Project closeout activities.
 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.
- D. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
 1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

1.6 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFIs)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
 1. Architect will return RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor with no response.
 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.

- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
1. Project name.
 2. Project number.
 3. Date.
 4. Name of Contractor.
 5. Name of Architect.
 6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
 7. RFI subject.
 8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
 9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
 11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
 12. Contractor's signature.
 13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
 - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: AIA Document G716 or Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.
1. Attachments shall be electronic files in Adobe Acrobat PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
 - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt of additional information.
 3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 01 26 00 "Contract Modification Procedures."
 - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly. Software log with not less than the following:
1. Project name.
 2. Name and address of Contractor.
 3. Name and address of Architect.
 4. RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
 5. RFI description.

6. Date the RFI was submitted.
7. Date Architect's response was received.

F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.

1. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
2. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.

1.7 PROJECT MEETINGS

A. General: Owner's Consultant shall schedule and conduct Owner/Architect/Contractor (OAC) meetings at Project site or location to be determined unless otherwise indicated.

1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times.
2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.

B. Preconstruction Conference: Owner will schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.

1. Conduct the conference to review responsibilities and personnel assignments.
2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
 - a. Tentative construction schedule.
 - b. Phasing.
 - c. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
 - d. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
 - e. Lines of communications.
 - f. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
 - g. Procedures for RFIs.
 - h. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
 - i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
 - j. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
 - k. Submittal procedures.
 - l. Preparation of record documents.
 - m. Use of the premises and existing building.
 - n. Work restrictions.
 - o. Working hours.
 - p. Owner's occupancy requirements.
 - q. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
 - r. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
 - s. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
 - t. Construction waste management and recycling.
 - u. Parking availability.
 - v. Office, work, and storage areas.
 - w. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
 - x. First aid.

- y. Security.
 - z. Progress cleaning.
4. Minutes: Consultant will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Pre-installation Conferences: Conduct a pre-installation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.
- 1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
 - 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
 - a. Contract Documents.
 - b. Options.
 - c. Related RFIs.
 - d. Related Change Orders.
 - e. Purchases.
 - f. Deliveries.
 - g. Submittals.
 - h. Review of mockups.
 - i. Possible conflicts.
 - j. Compatibility requirements.
 - k. Time schedules.
 - l. Weather limitations.
 - m. Manufacturer's written instructions.
 - n. Warranty requirements.
 - o. Compatibility of materials.
 - p. Acceptability of substrates.
 - q. Temporary facilities and controls.
 - r. Space and access limitations.
 - s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
 - u. Installation procedures.
 - v. Coordination with other work.
 - w. Required performance results.
 - x. Protection of adjacent work.
 - y. Protection of construction and personnel.
 - 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
 - 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
 - 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 14 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
- 1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
 - 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 - 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:

- a. Preparation of record documents.
 - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
 - c. Submittal of written warranties.
 - d. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
 - e. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
 - f. Requirements for demonstration and training.
 - g. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
 - h. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
 - i. Submittal procedures.
 - j. Coordination of separate contracts.
 - k. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
 - l. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
 - m. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- E. Progress Meetings of Owner/Architect/Contractor (OAC): Owner's Consultant to conduct progress meetings at weekly intervals.
- 1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
 - 2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 - 3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - 1) Review schedule for next period.
 - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
 - 4) Status of submittals.
 - 5) Deliveries.
 - 6) Off-site fabrication.
 - 7) Access.
 - 8) Site utilization.
 - 9) Temporary facilities and controls.
 - 10) Progress cleaning.
 - 11) Quality and work standards.
 - 12) Status of correction of deficient items.
 - 13) Field observations.
 - 14) Status of RFIs.
 - 15) Status of proposal requests.
 - 16) Pending changes.
 - 17) Status of Change Orders.
 - 18) Pending claims and disputes.

- 19) Documentation of information for payment requests.
4. Minutes: Owner's Consultant is responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
 - a. Schedule Updating: Contractor to revise construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Contractor to Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- F. Contractor and Sub-Contractor Coordination Meetings: Conduct Project coordination meetings at weekly intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and pre-installation conferences.
 1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - b. Schedule Updating: Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
 - c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
 - 4) Status of submittals.
 - 5) Deliveries.
 - 6) Off-site fabrication.
 - 7) Access.
 - 8) Site utilization.
 - 9) Temporary facilities and controls.
 - 10) Work hours.
 - 11) Hazards and risks.
 - 12) Progress cleaning.
 - 13) Quality and work standards.
 - 14) Change Orders.
 3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 31 00

01 32 00 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
 - 1. Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Construction schedule updating reports.
 - 3. Daily construction reports.
 - 4. Material location reports.
 - 5. Site condition reports.
 - 6. Special reports.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting schedules and reports.
 - 2. Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for submitting a schedule of tests and inspections.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
 - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
 - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
 - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine when activities can be performed and the critical path of Project.
- C. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- D. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- E. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
 - 1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.

2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
 1. PDF electronic file.
 2. Paper copies as needed.
- B. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
 1. Submit an electronic copy of schedule, labeled to comply with requirements for submittals. Include type of schedule (initial or updated) and date on label.
 2. The initial construction schedule is due within 30 days of receipt of the Notice to Proceed or Intent to Award letter, whichever comes first.
- C. Updated Construction Schedule: Submit as needed or requested and submit with Applications for Payment.
- D. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.
- E. Material Location Reports: Submit when requested.
- F. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.
- G. Special Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pre-scheduling Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to the Contractor's construction schedule, including, but not limited to, the following:
 1. Discuss constraints, including work stages, area separations, and interim milestones.
 2. Review delivery dates for Owner-furnished products.
 3. Review schedule for work of Owner's separate contracts.
 4. Review submittal requirements and procedures.
 5. Review time required for review of submittals and re-submittals.
 6. Review requirements for tests and inspections by independent testing and inspecting agencies.
 7. Review time required for Project closeout and Owner startup procedures, including commissioning activities.
 8. Review and finalize list of construction activities to be included in schedule.
 9. Review procedures for updating schedule.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's construction schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of Substantial Completion and including final completion.
 - 1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- B. Activities: Treat each story or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
 - 1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than Insert number days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
 - 2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 30 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
 - 3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and re-submittal times indicated in Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's construction schedule with submittal schedule.
 - 4. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
 - 5. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 15 days for completion of punch list items and final completion.
- C. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
 - 1. Products Ordered in Advance: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 01 10 00 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
 - 2. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
 - a. Coordination with existing activities.
 - b. Limitations of continued occupancies.
 - c. Uninterruptible services.
 - d. Use of premises restrictions.
 - e. Provisions for future construction.
 - f. Seasonal variations.
 - g. Environmental control.
 - 3. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Subcontract awards.
 - b. Submittals.
 - c. Purchases.
 - d. Mockups.
 - e. Fabrication.
 - f. Sample testing.
 - g. Deliveries.
 - h. Installation.
 - i. Tests and inspections.

- j. Adjusting.
 - k. Curing.
 - l. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
4. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
- a. Scaffolding completion.
 - b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
 - c. Substantial Completion.
5. Other Constraints: Events scheduled by the Nevada State Capitol.
- D. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and final completion.
- E. Cost Correlation: Superimpose a cost correlation timeline, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show planned and actual dollar volume of the Work performed as of planned and actual dates used for preparation of payment requests.
- 1. See Section 01 29 00 "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.
- F. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
- 1. Unresolved issues.
 - 2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
 - 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
 - 4. Notations on returned submittals.
 - 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and Contract Time.
- G. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, and equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
- H. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.

2.2 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
- 1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
 - 2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
 - 3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
 - 4. Equipment at Project site.
 - 5. Material deliveries.
 - 6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
 - 7. Accidents.
 - 8. Meetings and significant decisions.
 - 9. Unusual events (see special reports).
 - 10. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
 - 11. Emergency procedures.
 - 12. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.

13. Change Orders received and implemented.
14. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
15. Services connected and disconnected.
16. Partial completions.

B. Material Location Reports: At weekly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site. Indicate the following categories for stored materials:

1. Material stored prior to previous report and remaining in storage.
2. Material stored prior to previous report and since removed from storage and installed.
3. Material stored following previous report and remaining in storage.

C. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

2.3 SPECIAL REPORTS

- A. General: Submit special reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.
- B. Reporting Unusual Events: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, response by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At weekly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule 3 days before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
 3. As the Work progresses, indicate final completion percentage for each activity.
- B. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect, Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
1. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

END OF SECTION 01 32 00

01 32 33 PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
 - 1. Preconstruction photographs and video.
 - 2. Periodic construction photographs.
 - 3. Final completion construction photographs.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting photographic documentation.
 - 2. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting photographic documentation as project record documents at Project closeout.
 - 3. Section 02 42 96 "Historic Removal and Dismantling" for photographic documentation before selective demolition operations commence.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Key Plan: Submit key plan of Project site and building with notation of vantage points marked for location and direction of each photograph. Indicate elevation or story of construction. Include same information as corresponding photographic documentation.
- B. Digital Photographs: Submit image files within 3 days prior to project meetings.
 - 1. Digital Camera: Minimum sensor resolution of 8 megapixels.
 - 2. Format: Minimum 3200 by 2400 pixels, in unaltered original files, with same aspect ratio as the sensor, un-cropped, date and time stamped, in folder named by date of photograph, accompanied by key plan.
 - 3. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description in file metadata tag:
 - a. Name of Project.
 - b. Name of Contractor.
 - c. Date photograph was taken.
 - d. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point).
- C. Digital Video (Contractor's Option in lieu of digital photographs): Submit video prior to start of staging and construction.
 - 1. Video all exterior conditions and areas of work prior to any construction activity.
 - 2. Video staging area.

1.4 USAGE RIGHTS

- A. Transfer copyright usage rights to Owner for unlimited reproduction of photographic documentation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PHOTOGRAPHIC MEDIA

- A. Digital Images: Provide images in JPG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor size of 8 megapixels, and at an image resolution of not less than 3200 by 2400 pixels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. General: Take photographs using the maximum range of depth of field, and that are in focus, to clearly show the Work. Photographs with blurry or out-of-focus areas will not be accepted.
 - 1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.
- B. Digital Images: Submit digital images exactly as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
 - 1. Date and Time: Include date and time in file name for each image.
 - 2. Field Office Images: Maintain one set of images accessible in the field office at Project site, available at all times for reference. Identify images in the same manner as those submitted to Architect.
- C. Preconstruction Photographs: Before commencement of excavation, commencement of demolition, starting construction, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Architect.
 - 1. Flag excavation areas and construction limits before taking construction photographs.
 - 2. Take a minimum of 20 photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
 - 3. Take a minimum of 20 photographs of existing buildings either on or adjoining property to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
 - 4. Take additional photographs as required to record settlement or cracking of adjacent structures, pavements, and improvements.
- D. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take 20 photographs weekly, with timing each month adjusted to coincide with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
- E. Architect-Directed Construction Photographs: From time to time, the Architect will instruct photographer about number and frequency of photographs and general directions on vantage points. Select actual vantage points and take photographs to show the status of construction and progress since last photographs.
- F. Final Completion Construction Photographs: Take 20 color photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission as project record documents. Architect will inform photographer of desired vantage points.

END OF SECTION 01 32 33

01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

SUMMARY

- C. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.
- D. Submittals may be issued as soon as the Contract is executed and before the Construction Notice to Proceed.
- E. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 29 00 "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
 - 2. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 3. Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 4. Section 01 78 39 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."
- C. File Transfer Protocol (FTP): Communications protocol that enables transfer of files to and from another computer over a network and that serves as the basis for standard Internet protocols. An FTP site is a portion of a network located outside of network firewalls within which internal and external users are able to access files.
- D. Portable Document Format (PDF): An open standard file format licensed by Adobe Systems used for representing documents in a device-independent and display resolution-independent fixed-layout document format.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
 2. Initial Submittal: May be submitted after Contract execution and before Construction Notice to Proceed. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
 3. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
 - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
 - b. Specification Section number and title.
 - c. Submittal category: Action; informational.
 - d. Name of subcontractor.
 - e. Description of the Work covered.
 - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
 - g. Scheduled date of fabrication.
 - h. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
 - i. Scheduled dates for installation.
 - j. Activity or event number.

1.4 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Architect's Digital Data Files: Electronic digital data files of the Contract Drawings will not be provided by Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals.
1. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data drawing files of the Contract Drawings for use in preparing Shop Drawings.
 - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data drawing files as they relate to the Contract Drawings.
 - b. Digital Drawing Software Program: The Contract Drawings are available in AutoCAD 2013.
 - c. Contractor shall execute a CAD indemnification agreement prepared by the Architect.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
 3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
 4. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
 - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for re-submittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized

because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including re-submittals.

1. Initial Review: Allow 14 calendar days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
3. Re-submittal Review: Allow 14 calendar days for review of each re-submittal.
4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
5. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Architect and to Architect's consultants, allow 14 days for review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Architect before being returned to Contractor.

D. Paper Submittals: Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal item for identification.

1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
2. Provide a space approximately 6 by 8 inches on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
3. Include the following information for processing and recording action taken:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Construction Manager.
 - e. Name of Contractor.
 - f. Name of subcontractor.
 - g. Name of supplier.
 - h. Name of manufacturer.
 - i. Submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - 1) Submittal number shall use Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., 06 10 00.01). Re-submittals shall include an alphabetic suffix (R) after another decimal point along with the revision number (e.g., 06 10 00.01.R1).
 - j. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
 - k. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - l. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 - m. Other necessary identification.
4. Additional Paper Copies: Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Architect observes noncompliance with provisions in the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve as final submittal.
 - a. Submit one copy of submittal to concurrent reviewer in addition to specified number of copies to Architect.
5. Transmittal for Paper Submittals: Assemble each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Architect will discard submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
 - a. Transmittal Form for Paper Submittals: Use AIA Document G810 or CSI Form 12.1A.
 - b. Transmittal Form for Paper Submittals: Provide locations on form for the following information:
 - 1) Project name.

- 2) Date.
- 3) Destination (To:).
- 4) Source (From:).
- 5) Name and address of Architect.
- 6) Name of Construction Manager.
- 7) Name of Contractor.
- 8) Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
- 9) Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
- 10) Category and type of submittal.
- 11) Submittal purpose and description.
- 12) Specification Section number and title.
- 13) Specification paragraph number or drawing designation and generic name for each of multiple items.
- 14) Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
- 15) Indication of full or partial submittal.
- 16) Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
- 17) Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
- 18) Remarks.
- 19) Signature of transmitter.

E. Electronic Submittals (preferred): Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:

1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - a. File name shall use project identifier and Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., LNHS-061000.01). Re-submittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., LNHS-061000.01.A).
3. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
4. Transmittal Form for Electronic Submittals: Use software-generated form from electronic project management software electronic form acceptable to Owner, containing the following information:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name and address of Architect.
 - d. Name of Construction Manager.
 - e. Name of Contractor.
 - f. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 - g. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
 - h. Category and type of submittal.
 - i. Submittal purpose and description.
 - j. Specification Section number and title.
 - k. Specification paragraph number or drawing designation and generic name for each of multiple items.
 - l. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - m. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 - n. Related physical samples submitted directly.
 - o. Indication of full or partial submittal.
 - p. Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
 - q. Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
 - r. Other necessary identification.
 - s. Remarks.
5. Metadata: Include the following information as keywords in the electronic submittal file metadata:

- a. Project name.
 - b. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
 - c. Manufacturer name.
 - d. Product name.
- F. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- G. Deviations and Additional Information: On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same identification information as related submittal.
- H. Re-submittals: Make re-submittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
- 1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
 - 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
 - 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- I. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- J. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements: Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- 1. Submit electronic submittals via email as PDF electronic files.
 - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
 - 2. Action Submittals: Submit three paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
 - 3. Informational Submittals: Submit three paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
 - 4. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Provide a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
 - a. Provide a digital signature with digital certificate on electronically submitted certificates and certifications where indicated.
 - b. Provide a notarized statement on original paper copy certificates and certifications where indicated.
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
- 1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
 - 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.

3. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
 - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
 - c. Standard color charts.
 - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
 - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
 - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
 - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - h. Availability and delivery time information.
 4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
 - a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
 - b. Printed performance curves.
 - c. Operational range diagrams.
 - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
 5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
 6. Submit Product Data in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
 - b. Three paper copies of Product Data unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data, unless submittal based on Architect's digital data drawing files is otherwise permitted.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Identification of products.
 - b. Schedules.
 - c. Compliance with specified standards.
 - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
 - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
 - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
 2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
 3. Submit Shop Drawings in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
 - b. Three opaque (bond) copies of each submittal. Architect will return two copies.
- D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
 2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
 - a. Generic description of Sample.
 - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
 - c. Sample source.
 - d. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.

- e. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
- 3. For projects where electronic submittals are required, provide corresponding electronic submittal of Sample transmittal, digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.
- 4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
 - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
 - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
- 5. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit true full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
- 6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned Sample set as a project record sample.
 - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
 - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- E. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
 - 1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
 - 2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
 - 3. Number and name of room or space.
 - 4. Location within room or space.
 - 5. Submit product schedule in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
 - b. Three paper copies of product schedule or list unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
- F. Coordination Drawing Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination."

- G. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation."
- H. Application for Payment and Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 29 00 "Payment Procedures."
- I. Test and Inspection Reports and Schedule of Tests and Inspections Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."
- J. Closeout Submittals and Maintenance Material Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."
- K. Maintenance Data: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- L. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- M. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- N. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
- O. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- P. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- Q. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- R. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- S. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- T. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
 - 1. Name of evaluation organization.
 - 2. Date of evaluation.
 - 3. Time period when report is in effect.
 - 4. Product and manufacturers' names.
 - 5. Description of product.
 - 6. Test procedures and results.
 - 7. Limitations of use.

- U. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- V. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- W. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- X. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

2.2 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF electronic file and three paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
 - 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect and Construction Manager.
- B. Project Closeout and Maintenance Material Submittals: See requirements in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."
- C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action, as follows:
 - 1. Reviewed; No Exceptions Noted.
 - 2. Reviewed; Exceptions Noted – No Re-submittal Required.
 - 3. Reviewed; Exceptions Noted – Re-submittal Required.
 - 4. Rejected; Re-submittal Required.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for re-submittal without review.
- E. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

END OF SECTION 01 33 00

01 35 16 ALTERATION PROJECT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes special procedures for alteration work.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Alteration Work: This term includes remodeling, renovation, repair, and maintenance work performed within existing spaces or on existing surfaces as part of the Project.
- B. Consolidate: To strengthen loose or deteriorated materials in place.
- C. Design Reference Sample: A sample that represents the Architect's pre-bid selection of work to be matched; it may be existing work or work specially produced for the Project.
- D. Dismantle: To remove by disassembling or detaching an item from a surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to the item and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- E. Match: To blend with adjacent construction and manifest no apparent difference in material type, species, cut, form, detail, color, grain, texture, or finish; as approved by Architect.
- F. Refinish: To remove existing finishes to base material and apply new finish to match original, or as otherwise indicated.
- G. Repair: To correct damage and defects, retaining existing materials, features, and finishes. This includes patching, piecing-in, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing or upgrading materials.
- H. Replace: To remove, duplicate, and reinstall entire item with new material. The original item is the pattern for creating duplicates unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Replicate: To reproduce in exact detail, materials, and finish unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Reproduce: To fabricate a new item, accurate in detail to the original, and from either the same or a similar material as the original, unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Retain: To keep existing items that are not to be removed or dismantled.
- L. Strip: To remove existing finish down to base material unless otherwise indicated.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Alteration Work Sub-schedule: A construction schedule coordinating the sequencing and scheduling of alteration work for entire Project, including each activity to be performed, and based on Contractor's Construction Schedule. Secure time commitments for performing critical construction activities from separate entities responsible for alteration work.
1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain best Work results.
 2. Coordinate sequence of alteration work activities to accommodate the following:
 - a. Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building.
 - b. Other known work in progress.
 - c. Tests and inspections.
 3. Detail sequence of alteration work, with start and end dates.
 4. Utility Services: Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted. Coordinate shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
 5. Use of elevator and/or stairs.
 6. Equipment Data: List gross loaded weight, axle-load distribution, and wheel-base dimension data for mobile and heavy equipment proposed for use in existing structure. Do not use such equipment without certification from Contractor's professional engineer that the structure can support the imposed loadings without damage.
- B. Pedestrian and Vehicular Circulation: Coordinate alteration work with circulation patterns within Project building(s) and site. Some work is near circulation patterns. Circulation patterns cannot be closed off entirely and in places can be only temporarily redirected around small areas of work. Plan and execute the Work accordingly.

1.5 PROJECT MEETINGS FOR ALTERATION WORK

- A. Preliminary Conference for Alteration Work: Before starting alteration work, conduct conference at Project site.
1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Architect, and Contractor, testing service representative, specialists, and chemical-cleaner manufacturer(s) shall be represented at the meeting.
 2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress of alteration work, including review of the following:
 - a. Alteration Work Sub-schedule: Discuss and finalize; verify availability of materials, specialists' personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Fire-prevention plan.
 - c. Governing regulations.
 - d. Areas where existing construction is to remain and the required protection.
 - e. Hauling routes.
 - f. Sequence of alteration work operations.
 - g. Storage, protection, and accounting for salvaged and specially fabricated items.
 - h. Existing conditions, staging, and structural loading limitations of areas where materials are stored.
 - i. Qualifications of personnel assigned to alteration work and assigned duties.
 - j. Requirements for extent and quality of work, tolerances, and required clearances.
 - k. Embedded work such as flashings and lintels, special details, collection of waste, protection of occupants and the public, and condition of other construction that affects the Work or will affect the work.
 3. Reporting: Record conference results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from conference.

- B. Coordination Meetings: Conduct coordination meetings specifically for alteration work at weekly intervals. Coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and pre-installation conferences.
1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Architect, and Contractor, each specialist, supplier, installer, and other entity concerned with progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of alteration work activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to alteration work.
 2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress of alteration work. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Alteration Work Sub-schedule: Review progress since last coordination meeting. Determine whether each schedule item is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited with retention of quality; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities are completed within the Contract Time.
 - b. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's Alteration Work Sub-schedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
 - c. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including review items listed in the "Preliminary Conference for Alteration Work" Paragraph in this article and the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements of alteration work with other Project Work.
 - 2) Status of submittals for alteration work.
 - 3) Access to alteration work locations.
 - 4) Effectiveness of fire-prevention plan.
 - 5) Quality and work standards of alteration work.
 - 6) Change Orders for alteration work.
 3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

1.6 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Historic items, relics, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, antiques, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be encountered or uncovered during the Work, regardless of whether they were previously documented, remain Owner's property.
1. Carefully dismantle and salvage each item or object in a manner to prevent damage and protect it from damage, then promptly deliver it to Owner where directed at Project site.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Preconstruction Documentation: Show preexisting conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements that are to remain, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by Contractor's alteration work operations.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Alteration Work Program: Prepare a written plan for alteration work for whole Project, including each phase or process and protection of surrounding materials during operations. Show compliance with indicated methods and procedures specified in this and other Sections. Coordinate this whole-Project alteration work program with specific requirements of programs required in other alteration work Sections.

1. Dust and Noise Control: Include locations of proposed temporary dust- and noise-control partitions and means of egress from occupied areas coordinated with continuing on-site operations and other known work in progress.
 2. Debris Hauling: Include plans clearly marked to show debris hauling routes, turning radii, and locations and details of temporary protective barriers.
- B. Fire-Prevention Plan: Prepare a written plan for preventing fires during the Work, including placement of fire extinguishers, fire blankets, rag buckets, and other fire-control devices during each phase or process. Coordinate plan with Owner's fire-protection equipment and requirements. Include fire-watch personnel's training, duties, and authority to enforce fire safety.
- C. Safety and Health Standard: Comply with ANSI/ASSE A10.6.

1.9 HANDLING OF EXISTING MATERIALS

- A. Existing Materials to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling from construction work. Where permitted by Architect, items may be dismantled and taken to a suitable, protected storage location during construction work and reinstalled in their original locations after alteration and other construction work in the vicinity is complete.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions that affect the Work by use of measured drawings and preconstruction photographs.
1. Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 32 33 "Photographic Documentation."
- B. Discrepancies: Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with removal and dismantling work.
- C. Size Limitations in Existing Spaces: Materials, products, and equipment used for performing the Work and for transporting debris, materials, and products shall be of sizes that clear surfaces within existing spaces, areas, rooms, and openings, including temporary protection, by 12 inches or more.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS - (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Protect persons, motor vehicles, surrounding surfaces of building, building site, plants, and surrounding buildings from harm resulting from alteration work.
1. Use only proven protection methods, appropriate to each area and surface being protected.
 2. Provide temporary barricades, barriers, and directional signage to exclude the public from areas where alteration work is being performed.
 3. Erect temporary barriers to form and maintain fire-egress routes.
 4. Erect temporary protective covers over walkways and at points of pedestrian and vehicular entrance and exit that must remain in service during alteration work.
 5. Contain dust and debris generated by alteration work, and prevent it from reaching the public or adjacent surfaces.
 6. Provide shoring, bracing, and supports as necessary. Do not overload structural elements.
 7. Protect floors and other surfaces along hauling routes from damage, wear, and staining.

8. Provide supplemental sound-control treatment to isolate demolition work from other areas of the building.

B. Temporary Protection of Materials to Remain:

1. Protect existing materials with temporary protections and construction. Do not remove existing materials unless otherwise indicated.
2. Do not attach temporary protection to existing surfaces except as indicated as part of the alteration work program.
3. Protect historic features and finish materials during selective demolition and construction.

C. Comply with each product manufacturer's written instructions for protections and precautions. Protect against adverse effects of products and procedures on people and adjacent materials, components, and vegetation.

D. Utility and Communications Services:

1. Notify Owner, Architect, authorities having jurisdiction, and entities owning or controlling wires, conduits, pipes, and other services affected by alteration work before commencing operations.
2. Disconnect and cap pipes and services as required by authorities having jurisdiction, as required for alteration work.
3. Maintain existing services unless otherwise indicated; keep in service, and protect against damage during operations. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities.

E. Existing Drains: Prior to the start of work in an area, test drainage system to ensure that it is functioning properly. Notify Architect immediately of inadequate drainage or blockage. Do not begin work in an area until the drainage system is functioning properly.

1. Prevent solids such as adhesive or mortar residue or other debris from entering the drainage system. Clean out drains and drain lines that become sluggish or blocked by sand or other materials resulting from alteration work.
2. Protect drains from pollutants. Block drains or filter out sediments, allowing only clean water to pass.

3.2 PROTECTION FROM FIRE

A. General: Follow fire-prevention plan and the following:

1. Comply with NFPA 241 requirements unless otherwise indicated.
2. Remove and keep area free of combustibles, including rubbish, paper, waste, and chemicals, unless necessary for the immediate work.

- a. If combustible material cannot be removed, provide fire blankets to cover such materials.

B. Heat-Generating Equipment and Combustible Materials: Comply with the following procedures while performing work with heat-generating equipment or combustible materials, including welding, torch-cutting, soldering, brazing, removing paint with heat, or other operations where open flames or implements using high heat or combustible solvents and chemicals are anticipated:

1. Obtain Owner's approval for operations involving use of welding or other high-heat equipment. Use of open-flame equipment is not permitted. Notify Owner at least 72 hours before each occurrence, indicating location of such work.
2. As far as practicable, restrict heat-generating equipment to shop areas or outside the building.
3. Do not perform work with heat-generating equipment in or near rooms or in areas where flammable liquids or explosive vapors are present or thought to be present. Use a combustible gas indicator test to ensure that the area is safe.
4. Use fireproof baffles to prevent flames, sparks, hot gases, or other high-temperature material from reaching surrounding combustible material.

5. Prevent the spread of sparks and particles of hot metal through open windows, doors, holes, and cracks in floors, walls, ceilings, roofs, and other openings.
6. Fire Watch: Before working with heat-generating equipment or combustible materials, station personnel to serve as a fire watch at each location where such work is performed. Fire-watch personnel shall have the authority to enforce fire safety. Station fire watch according to NFPA 51B, NFPA 241, and as follows:
 - a. Train each fire watch in the proper operation of fire-control equipment and alarms.
 - b. Prohibit fire-watch personnel from other work that would be a distraction from fire-watch duties.
 - c. Cease work with heat-generating equipment whenever fire-watch personnel are not present.
 - d. Have fire-watch personnel perform final fire-safety inspection each day beginning no sooner than 30 minutes after conclusion of work in each area to detect hidden or smoldering fires and to ensure that proper fire prevention is maintained.
 - e. Maintain fire-watch personnel at each area of Project site until 60 minutes after conclusion of daily work.
- C. Fire-Control Devices: Provide and maintain fire extinguishers, fire blankets, and rag buckets for disposal of rags with combustible liquids. Maintain each as suitable for the type of fire risk in each work area. Ensure that nearby personnel and the fire-watch personnel are trained in fire-extinguisher and blanket use.
- D. Sprinklers: Where sprinkler protection exists and is functional, maintain it without interruption while operations are being performed. If operations are performed close to sprinklers, shield them temporarily with guards.
 1. Remove temporary guards at the end of work shifts, whenever operations are paused, and when nearby work is complete.

3.3 PROTECTION DURING APPLICATION OF CHEMICALS

- A. Protect motor vehicles, surrounding surfaces of building, building site, plants, and surrounding buildings from harm or spillage resulting from applications of chemicals and adhesives.
- B. Cover adjacent surfaces with protective materials that are proven to resist chemicals selected for Project unless chemicals being used will not damage adjacent surfaces as indicated in alteration work program. Use covering materials and masking agents that are waterproof and UV resistant and that will not stain or leave residue on surfaces to which they are applied. Apply protective materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply liquid masking agents or adhesives to painted or porous surfaces. When no longer needed, promptly remove protective materials.
- C. Do not apply chemicals during winds of sufficient force to spread them to unprotected surfaces.
- D. Neutralize alkaline and acid wastes and legally dispose of off Owner's property.
- E. Collect and dispose of runoff from chemical operations by legal means and in a manner that prevents soil contamination, soil erosion, undermining of paving and foundations, damage to landscaping, or water penetration into building interior.

3.4 GENERAL ALTERATION WORK

- A. Have specialty work performed only by qualified specialists.
- B. Ensure that supervisory personnel are present when work begins and during its progress.
- C. Record existing work before each procedure (preconstruction), and record progress during the work. Use digital preconstruction documentation photographs. Comply with requirements in Section 01 32 33 "Photographic Documentation."

- D. Perform surveys of Project site as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from alterations.
- E. Notify Architect of visible changes in the integrity of material or components whether from environmental causes including biological attack, UV degradation, freezing, or thawing or from structural defects including cracks, movement, or distortion.
 - 1. Do not proceed with the work in question until directed by Architect.

END OF SECTION 01 35 16

01 35 91 PROTECTION, SALVAGE, AND TREATMENT PROCEDURES FOR HISTORIC BUILDING MATERIALS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Dangberg Ranch are contributing, character-defining structures in the National Register of Historic Places. As such the highest level of preservation of historic materials shall apply to this structure and the work of this contract. In addition to all other requirements, all work of this contract shall be performed in accordance with the *Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring and Reconstructing Historic Buildings*.
- B. This Section includes general protection, salvage and treatment procedures for designated historic spaces, areas, and surfaces for the Project and the following specific work including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Repair and painting of exterior columns, windows, fascia, soffits, frieze, cornice, ornamentations, balustrades, and Capitol dome.
 - 2. Refinish all exterior doors.
 - 3. Repair and reconstruct copper gutters.
 - 4. Repoint sandstone masonry veneer.
 - 5. Clean sandstone masonry veneer.
- D. General Requirements: It shall be understood that the Work of this Section seeks to preserve the character of the historic building by leaving in place as much of the original materials as possible and, where removals are necessary, by saving historic building components, fixtures and fittings for subsequent reinstallation.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. National Park Service Preservation Tech Note Number 2, *Specifying Temporary Protection of Historic Interiors During Construction and Repair*, by Dale H. Frens, AIA, 1993.
- B. National Park Service Preservation Tech Note Number 3, *Protecting a Historic Structure during Adjacent Construction*, by Chad Randl, 2001.
- C. NFPA 241, *Standard for Safeguarding Building Construction and Demolition Operations*, National Fire Protection Agency.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. "Consolidate": To strengthen loose or deteriorated materials in situ.

- B. "Dismantle": To disassemble and detach items by hand from existing construction to the limits indicated, using small hand tools and small one-hand power tools, so as to protect nearby historic surfaces; and legally dispose of dismantled items off-site, unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- C. "Existing to Remain": Existing items that are not to be removed or dismantled. Take precautions to protect materials noted.
- D. "Historic": Spaces, areas, rooms, surfaces, materials, finishes, and overall appearance which are important to the successful preservation, rehabilitation, restoration, and reconstruction as determined by Architect/Engineer. The designation "HF" and words such as "historic," "historic fabric," "historic materials," "historic building materials," or words of similar meaning shall be understood to mean that the material or feature is considered to have aspects that require preservation and all work impacting the material or feature shall conform to the *Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties*.
- E. "Historic Preservation Specialist" or "Conservator": A person retained by the Owner to provide guidance for compliance with the *Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties*.
- F. "In-Kind": Match existing in all physical and visual aspects including material, form, color, texture and workmanship.
- G. "Match": To blend with adjacent construction and manifest no apparent difference in material type, species, cut, form, detail, color, grain, texture or finish; as approved by Architect/Engineer.
- H. "Preserve": To apply measures necessary to sustain the existing form, integrity, and materials of a historic property. Work may include preliminary measures to protect and stabilize the property.
- I. "Protect": Take all necessary precautions to keep historic materials of the building from damage or injury. Provide temporary guards and covering as needed. Materials should be in the same condition and same location in the building upon completion of the project as when they were when the project began.
- J. "Reconstruct": To remove existing item, replicate damaged or missing components, and reinstall in original position.
- K. "Refinish": To remove existing finishes to base material and apply new finish to match original or as otherwise indicated.
- L. "Reinstall": To protect removed or dismantled item, repair and clean as indicated for reuse, and reinstall in original position, or where indicated.
- M. "Remove": To detach or dismantle items from existing construction, label, package, and deliver them to Owner ready for reuse or storage, or as indicated for reinstallation.
- N. "Repair": To correct damage and defects, retaining existing materials, features and finishes while employing little new material as possible. Includes patching, piecing-in, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing or upgrading materials with appropriate and approved materials and methods.
- O. "Replace": To remove, duplicate, and reinstall entire item with new material. The original item is the pattern for creating duplicates unless noted otherwise.
- P. "Replicate" or "Reproduce": To fabricate a new item in exact detail, materials and finish to the original, and in either the same or similar material as the original, unless otherwise indicated.
- Q. "Restore": To consolidate, replicate, reproduce, repair, and refinish as required to achieve the indicated results.
- R. "Retain": To keep existing items that are not to be removed or dismantled. S. "Reversible": New construction work, treatment, or processes that can be removed or undone in the future without damaging historic materials, unless otherwise indicated.

- T. "Salvage": To protect removed or dismantled items and deliver them to the Owner, ready for reuse as indicated.
- U. "Stabilize": To provide structural reinforcement of unsafe or deteriorated items while maintaining the essential form as it exists at present; also, to reestablish a weather-resistant enclosure.
- V. "Strip": To remove existing finish down to base material, unless otherwise indicated.

1.5 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Historic items, relics and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, ornamentation, antiques, and other items of interest or value to the Owner that may be encountered during removal and dismantling work remain the Owner's property. Carefully dismantle and salvage each item or object as indicated.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Historic Treatment Program: Prepare a written plan for historic treatments for the Project, including each phase or process, including removal of historic materials, and protection of surrounding materials during operations. Describe in detail the materials, methods, and equipment to be used for each phase of work. Show compliance with indicated methods and procedures specified in this and other Sections. Include the following:
 - 1. Dust and Noise Control: Include locations of proposed temporary dust- and noise-control partitions. Coordinate with Egress Plan for means of egress from occupied areas with continuing on-site operations and other known work in progress.
 - 2. Debris Hauling: Include plans clearly marked to show debris hauling routes, turning radii, debris chutes if applicable, and locations and details of temporary protective barriers.
- B. Construction Schedule for Historic Treatments: Indicate for entire Project the following for each activity to be performed in historic spaces, areas and rooms, and on historic surfaces:
 - 1. Detailed sequence of historic treatment work, with starting and ending dates, coordinated with Owner's continuing operations and other known work in progress.
 - 2. Utility Services: Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted. Coordinate shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
 - 3. Use of elevators and stairs.
 - 4. Coordination of Owner's and other's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
 - 5. Equipment data, if applicable: List gross loaded weight, axle-load distribution, and wheelbase dimension data for mobile and heavy equipment proposed for use. Do not use such equipment without Contractor's professional engineer's certification that the structure can support the imposed loadings without damage.
- C. Protection Plan:
 - 1. Contractor shall prepare a Protection Plan. This Protection Plan shall provide for protection of all pivotal, primary and secondary elements and shall include:
 - a. Types of protection to be employed, including detailed description of materials to be used and where they are to be used.
 - b. Duration of protection for each location/application.
 - c. Description of clean-up of historic fabric.
 - 2. Such Protection Plan shall be reviewed by the Historic Preservation Specialist and approved by the Architect/Engineer and the Owner.

3. Contractor may propose temporary removal, packaging and storage of historic components, fixtures and fittings otherwise designated to remain (e.g., doors) as a means of protection. Any such proposal shall be accompanied by a removals plan, to be reviewed and approved by Owner prior to any temporary removal.
- D. Fire Prevention Plan: Prepare a written plan for preventing fires during the Work, including placement of fire extinguishers, fire blankets, rag buckets, and other fire-prevention devices during each phase or process. Coordinate plan with Owner's fire-protection equipment and requirements. Include each fire watch's training, duties, and authority to enforce fire safety.
- E. Egress Plan: Prepare a written egress plan for the Project, including floor diagrams and other signage to be displayed during the Work. Revise egress plans as required throughout the Project for continued safe access of building occupants and workers.
- F. Access Plan: Indicate methods and procedures for access, such as scaffolding, aerial lifts, ladders, etc. Coordinate with egress plan, use of elevators or stairs, and Owner's continuing occupancy of all or portions of the building. Coordinate any disruptions of use in construction schedule.
- G. Removals Plan: Contractor shall produce a written Removals Plan that details procedures, materials and sequences of operations necessary to carefully remove, package, and store historic building components, fixtures and fittings. Such Removals Plan shall be reviewed by the Historic Preservation Specialist and approved by the A/E and Owner. The Removals Plan shall include procedures to assure a standard of care by each trade or type of removal to assure:
 1. Verification that historic items proposed for removal are properly documented prior to removal.
 2. Verification of proposed tagging and labeling measures.
 3. Verification of proposed packaging techniques and storage procedures.
 4. Verification that all historic and non-historic items removed have been documented by the Owner for storage or disposal prior to any materials being removed from the site.
- H. Inventory of Salvaged Items: After removal or dismantling work is complete, submit a list of items that have been salvaged.
- I. Preconstruction Documentation: Record existing conditions of historic materials, adjoining construction and site improvements. Include finish surfaces that might be misconstrued as damage, and where documentation is necessary for reconstruction or reinstallation. Coordinate with selective demolition operations. Document through photographs and/or video.
- J. Project Record Documents: See Article 1.8 below for requirements.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Prepare mockups of specific historic treatment procedures specified in this Section to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 1. Typical Removal Work: Location of wall area as shown on Drawings. Remove an area of typical mortar repointing of an area approximately 25 square feet.
 2. Typical and/or Temporary Dismantling Work: Dismantle only as needed.
 3. Exploratory Dismantling and/or Removal: Perform in the presence of Architect/Engineer.
 - a. Follow the procedure specified in "Historic Removal and Dismantling" Article.
 - b. Continuation of the dismantling and/or removal may be suspended by Architect/Engineer for re-evaluation.
 4. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect/Engineer specifically approves such deviations in writing.

- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with notification regulations of authorities having jurisdiction before beginning removal and dismantling work. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSE A10.6. G. Historic Treatment Preconstruction Conference: Conduct at Project Site.
 - 1. General: Review methods and procedures related to historic treatment including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Review manufacturer's written instructions for precautions and effects of historic treatment procedures on materials, components, and vegetation.
 - b. Review and finalize historic treatment construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - c. Review qualifications of personnel assigned to the work and assign duties.
 - d. Review material application, work sequencing, tolerances, and required clearances.
 - e. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.
 - 2. Removal and Dismantling:
 - a. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be removed or dismantled.
 - b. Review requirements of other work that relies on substrates exposed by removal and dismantling work.

1.8 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Keep accurate records and document the selective demolition and construction work related to historic materials, fixtures, and finishes throughout the Project. On-going photographic and descriptive documentation of affected historic materials is a requirement under this contract. General documentation procedures may be as follows:
 - 1. Photographic documentation of removed or dismantled items:
 - a. Documentation shall clearly show the location of all historic fabric to be disturbed or removed from its original location in the structures, or in the landscape.
 - b. Clearly label and log each item. Coordinate with the inventory of salvaged items.
 - c. Document temporary protection, including covering or crates, and, if removed from Work area, note location of temporary storage.
 - 2. Photographic documentation, general:
 - a. Mark historic fabric to be disturbed with alpha-numeric identification, unless already identified.
 - b. Photograph prior to disturbing.
 - c. Photograph as needed during the removal process. The number of photographs required is directly dependent upon the uniqueness of the feature, complexity of the work, and/or difficulties encountered. Coordinate with the Owner.
 - d. Use digital camera technology and clearly label and log each item. All digital photographs shall be electronically date-stamped. Make hard copy prints of all digital images, in duplicate.
 - e. Place photographs in approved file system at the jobsite, and send all digital images to the Owner's representative.
 - f. Make photographs available to construction personnel and the Owner.
 - g. The use of digital cameras is authorized, provided photographs can be viewed at the jobsite, upon request, on a computer screen not smaller than 15" diagonal measure and photographic printing capabilities are provided.
 - h. Make copies of all selected photographs available to the Owner for the Owner's exclusive use.
 - 3. Descriptive records:

- a. The purpose for maintaining written records is to show, illustrate, or describe historic fabric, items, material, facilities, features, styles, and workmanship relating to a bygone era. Present or future historians must be able to evaluate, interpret, replicate, or restore all or portions of these structures and/or changes made to portions thereof.
 - b. Maintain a detailed written daily log describing work performed, difficulties encountered, and problems resolved as relates to the historic fabric of these structures and surrounding historic landscape. Included shall be descriptions of existing construction details, types of material, fasteners, and methods employed in the historic construction, and to what extent authorized changes were made.
 - c. Included in the daily log shall be detailed dimensioned sketches/drawings as may be required to add meaning to the written and/or photographic log/records and to allow the Contractor to accurately reproduce the structures. The Owner may request certain specific sketches/drawings be made for inclusion into the written record.
 - d. Maintain records in an approved file system at the jobsite and make such available to construction personnel and the Owner.
4. At final acceptance, provide all records to the Owner assembled in the following format:
- a. Photographs shall be filed in three-ring binders, protected, and placed within clear polypropylene see-through archival print preservers, sized to match photograph size. Clearly label and number each photograph. Each three-ring binder shall have a descriptive photograph index for rapid locating of individual photographs within the binder.
 - b. Digital images (and negatives if used) shall become the property of the Owner. (Place negatives into an approved file system, clearly labeled, dated, and sequenced for rapid identification and retrieval. Do not intermix negatives or separate from the sequences in which the photographs were taken.)
 - c. Neatly typed descriptive records, sketches, and drawings shall be filed within three-ring binders or other approved filing/organizing system. File in a logical chronological manner, consistent with the order of actual work performed. Provide descriptive index for rapid location of records within filing system.
 - d. Digital photographs shall be downloaded onto a CD. Additionally, a hard copy of each index shall be placed with each CD and a stick-on label placed on the outside of each CD jacket identifying the contents of each CD. B. Record Documents: Include modifications to manufacturer's written instructions and procedures, as documented in the historic treatment preconstruction conference and as the Work progresses.

1.9 STORAGE AND PROTECTION OF HISTORIC MATERIALS

- A. General: Protect all historic materials from general abuse, rough handling, tool marks, paint splattering, punctures, penetrations, saw marks, and related damage.
- B. Removed or Dismantled and Salvaged Historic Materials:
 1. Clean only loose debris from salvaged historic items unless more extensive cleaning is indicated.
 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning; cushion against damage during handling. Label contents of containers.
 3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
 4. Transport items to Owner's storage area on-site.
 5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
 6. Do not dispose of items removed from existing construction without prior written consent of Owner.
- C. Historic Materials for Reinstallation:
 1. Clean and repair historic items as indicated to functional condition adequate for intended reuse, using approved and specified materials and methods.
 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing; cushion against damage during handling. Label contents of containers.

3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.

D. Existing Historic Materials to Remain: Protect historic materials indicated to remain against damage and soiling during construction. When permitted by Owner, items may be dismantled and taken to a suitable, protected storage location during construction work, and reinstalled in their original locations after historic treatment construction in the vicinity is complete.

E. Storage and Protection: When taken from their existing locations, catalog and store historic materials within a weathertight enclosure where they are protected from wetting by rain, snow, condensation, or ground water, and temperature variations. Secure stored materials to protect from theft.

1. Identify each item with a non-permanent mark to document its original location. Indicate original locations on plans, elevations, sections, or photographs by annotating the identifying marks.
2. Stone and brick may be stored outside. Protect from freeze-thaw effects and vandalism.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. General Size Limitation in Historic Spaces: Materials, products, and equipment used for performing the Work and for transporting debris, materials, and products shall be of sizes that clear surfaces within historic spaces, areas, rooms, and openings, including temporary protection, by 12 inches or more.
- B. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to removal and dismantling area. Conduct removal and dismantling work so Owner's operations will not be disrupted
- C. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by the Owner as far as practical.
- D. Notify Architect/Engineer of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with removal and dismantling work.
- E. Hazardous Materials: Hazardous materials are present in construction affected by removal and dismantling work. A report on the presence of hazardous materials is on file for review and use. Examine report to become aware of locations where hazardous materials are present.

1. If unanticipated asbestos is suspected, stop work in the area of potential hazard, shut off fans and other air handlers ventilating the area, and rope off area until the questionable material is identified. Re-assign workers to continue work in unaffected areas. Resume work in the area of concern after safe working conditions are verified. H. Storage or sale of removed or dismantled items on-site is not permitted unless otherwise indicated.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 PROTECTION MATERIALS

A. General:

1. Use materials specified, or as approved in Historic Treatment Plan.
2. Do not use materials that will stain or leave residue on historic materials.
3. Materials for protection shall be compatible with and disposed of in accordance with Section 01 74 19, Construction Waste Management and Disposal.

B. Protection Materials:

1. Polyethylene sheets: 4 mil., fire retardant.
2. Lumber: Species to be selected by Contractor, sized to fit field conditions, FSC certified.
3. Plywood: 3/4-in., FSC certified.
4. Preservation tape: Scotch 4811 by 3M.
5. Safe-release tape: 3M Blue painter's tape.
6. Polyurethane foam sheets: 2 in. and 4 in. thick, as required.
7. Polyester urethane foam: Ethafoam 220, 2 in. thick.
8. Polyethylene foam sheets: Ethafoam 222 ½ in. thick and Volara 1/8 in. thick.
9. Polyethylene sheeting: DuPont "Tyvek", non-printed rolls (no labels).
10. Or other materials acceptable to the Owner and Architect

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HISTORIC REMOVAL AND DISMANTLING EQUIPMENT

- A. Removal Equipment: Use only hand-held tools except as follows or unless otherwise approved by Architect/Engineer on a case-by-case basis:
- B. Dismantling Equipment: Use manual, hand-held tools, except as follows or otherwise approved by Architect on a case-by-case basis:
 1. Hand-held power tools and cutting torches are permitted only as submitted in the historic treatment program. They must be adjustable so as to penetrate or cut only the thickness of material being removed.
 2. Pry bars more than 18 inches (450 mm) long and hammers weighing more than 2 lb (0.9 kg) are not permitted for dismantling work.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Prior to start of Work, examine each work area with the Owner and Architect/Engineer to determine with mutual agreement, which items, features, and materials are to be retained and protected. Physically and visibly mark such items, features, and materials as directed. Physically and visibly mark as directed such items, features, and materials as are mutually agreed to be removed and replaced with new materials. Carefully remove, label, document, catalog, and safely store original elements that are required to be retained, reinstalled, reused, or placed in long term storage.
- B. Preparation for Removal and Dismantling: Examine construction to be removed or dismantled to determine best methods to safely and effectively perform removal and dismantling work. Examine adjacent work to determine what protective measures will be necessary. Make explorations, probes, and inquiries as necessary to determine condition of construction to be removed or dismantled and location of utilities and services to remain that may be hidden by construction that is to be removed or dismantled.
 1. Do not disturb sound original material, which is in place or is found at the site, unless specific agreements between the Owner and Architect/Engineer have been reached
 2. Verify that affected utilities have been disconnected and capped.
 3. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and dismantled for salvage or reinstallation.
 4. Before removal or dismantling of existing elements that will be reproduced or duplicated in final Work, make permanent record of measurements, materials, and construction details required to make exact reproductions.
 5. As required, engage a professional engineer to survey condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures as a result of removal and dismantling work.

- C. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of measured drawings, preconstruction photographs and preconstruction video.
 - 1. Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Photographic Documentation".
 - 2. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from historic treatment procedures.
- D. Bring any pre-existing damage to the attention of the Owner before proceeding with the installation of protection. Contractor shall document all such pre-existing damage, and shall be responsible for the cost of any repair of damage not documented prior to installation of protective material which is revealed upon removal of protection.
 - 1. In the event of new damage, inform Owner immediately and describe nature and extent of damage and proposed method of repair. Do not attempt repairs without an approved repair plan.

3.3 PROTECTION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with temporary barrier requirements in Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls".
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for precautions and effects of products and procedures on adjacent building materials, components, and vegetation.
- C. Ensure that supervisory personnel are on-site and on duty when historic treatment work begins and during its progress.
- D. Protect persons, motor vehicles, surrounding surfaces of building, building site, plants, and surrounding buildings from harm resulting from historic treatment procedures.
 - 1. Use only proven protection methods, appropriate to each area and surface being protected.
 - 2. Provide barricades, barriers, and temporary directional signage to exclude public from areas where historic treatment work is being performed
 - 3. Erect temporary protective covers over walkways and at points of pedestrian and vehicular entrance and exit that must remain in service during course of historic treatment Work.
 - 4. Contain dust and debris generated by removal and dismantling work and prevent it from reaching the public or adjacent surfaces.
 - 5. Provide shoring, bracing, and additional support as necessary. Do not overload structural elements.
 - 6. Protect floors and other surfaces in work areas and along routes of travel from damage, wear, and staining
- E. Temporary Protection of Historic Materials:
 - 1. Protect existing materials during installation of temporary protections and construction. Do not deface or remove existing materials, unless indicated otherwise.
 - 2. Attachments of temporary protection to existing construction shall be reviewed by Architect/Engineer and approved by Owner prior to installation. Secure protection adequately to maintain safe environment for workers and other individuals using building. Do not attach protection materials directly to historic components, fixtures and fittings unless indicated otherwise.
- F. Utility and Communications Services:
 - 1. Notify Owner, Architect/Engineer, authorities having jurisdiction, and entities owning or controlling wires, conduits, pipes, and other services affected by the historic treatment work before commencing operations.
 - 2. Disconnect and cap pipes and services as required by authorities having jurisdiction, as required for the historic treatment work.

3. Maintain existing services unless otherwise indicated; keep in service, and protect against damage during operations. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities.

G. Existing Drains: Prior to the start of work or any cleaning operations, test drains and other water removal systems to ensure that drains and systems are functioning properly. Notify Owner immediately of drains or systems that are stopped or blocked. Do not begin Work of this Section until the drains are in working order.

1. Provide a method to prevent solids including stone or mortar residue from entering the drains or drain lines. Clean out drains and drain lines that become blocked or filled by sand or any other solids because of work performed under this Contract.
2. Protect storm drains from pollutants. Block drains or filter out sediments, allowing only clean water to pass.

H. Existing Roofing: Prior to the start of work in an area, install roofing protection.
1. Roofing to be protected from all scaffolding placed on roof. The roof shall be repaired at no expense to the Owner if damaged by scaffolding and/or other construction operations.

I. Site Protection: Protect landscape work adjacent to or within work areas as follows.

1. Provide barriers to protect tree trunks, and roots below tree canopies.
2. Bind spreading shrubs.
3. Use coverings that allow plants to breathe and remove coverings at the end of each day. Do not cover plant material with a waterproof membrane for more than 8 hours at a time.
4. Set scaffolding and ladder legs away from plants.
5. Do not allow storage of materials within the drip lines of trees.

J. Where automatic sprinkler system exists and is functional, maintain it without interruption while operations are being performed. If operations are performed close to automatic sprinkler heads, shield the individual heads temporarily with guards.

3.4 PROTECTION DURING APPLICATION OF CHEMICALS

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Protect persons, motor vehicles, surrounding surfaces of building being restored, building site, plants, and surrounding buildings from harm or damage resulting from applications of chemical cleaners and paint removers.
- C. Cover adjacent surfaces with protective materials that are proven to resist chemical cleaners selected for Project unless chemicals being used will not damage adjacent surfaces as indicated in historic treatment program. Use covering materials and masking agents that are waterproof, UV-resistant, and will not stain or leave residue on surfaces to which they are applied. Apply protective materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply liquid masking agents or adhesives to painted or porous surfaces. When no longer needed, promptly remove masking materials to prevent staining.
- D. Do not apply chemicals during winds of sufficient force to spread them to unprotected surfaces.
- E. Collect and dispose of runoff from chemical operations by legal means and in a manner that prevents soil contamination, soil erosion, undermining of paving and foundations, damage to landscaping, and water penetration into building interior.

3.5 PROTECTION DURING USE OF HEAT-GENERATING EQUIPMENT

- A. General: Follow Project fire prevention plan, accepted industry standards, and the following provisions.

- B. Heat-Generating Equipment and Combustible Materials: Comply with the following procedures while performing work with heat-generating equipment or highly combustible materials, including welding, torch-cutting, soldering, brazing, paint removal with heat, or other operations where open flames or implements utilizing high heat or combustible solvents and chemicals are anticipated.
1. Prohibit the use of all tobacco products by personnel performing work on or near historic structures.
 2. Obtain Owner's approval for operations involving use of open-flame or welding or other high-heat equipment. Notify Owner at least 72 hours before each occurrence, indicating location of such work.
 4. As far as practical, restrict heat-generating equipment to shop areas or outside the building.
 5. Do not perform work with heat-generating equipment in or near rooms or in areas where flammable liquids or explosive vapors are present or thought to be present. Use a combustible gas indicator test to ensure that the area is safe.
 6. Use fireproof baffles to prevent flames, sparks, hot gases, or other high-temperature material from reaching surrounding combustible material.
 7. Prevent the spread of sparks and particles of hot metal through open windows, doors, holes, and cracks in floors, walls, ceilings, roofs, and other openings.
 8. Fire Watch: Before working with heat-generating equipment or highly combustible materials, station personnel to serve as a fire watch at each location where such work is performed. Fire-watch personnel shall have the authority to enforce fire safety. Station fire watch according to NFPA 51B, NFPA 241, and as follows.
 - a. Train each fire watch in the proper operation of fire-control equipment and alarms.
 - b. Prohibit fire-watch personnel from other work that would be a distraction from fire watch duties.
 - c. Cease work with heat-generating equipment whenever fire-watch personnel are not present.
 - d. Have fire watch perform final fire-safety inspection each day beginning no sooner than 30 minutes after conclusion of work at each area of Project site to detect hidden or smoldering fires and to ensure that proper fire-prevention is maintained.
 - e. Maintain fire-watch personnel at each area of Project site until 60 minutes after conclusion of daily work.
 9. When heating equipment is required for construction, supply vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic controls. The use of gasoline-burning space heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
- C. Sprinklers: Where sprinkler protection exists and is functional, maintain system without interruption while Work is being performed. If operations are performed close to sprinkler heads or other components, shield temporarily with guards.
1. Remove temporary guards at the end of work shifts, whenever operations are paused, and when nearby work is completed.
- D. Fire Extinguishers and Fire Blankets: Furnish and maintain fire extinguishers and fire blankets at work areas. Maintain each as suitable for the type of fire risk in each work area. Ensure that nearby personnel and the fire watch are trained in fire-extinguisher and blanket operation.
- E. Flammable Material Storage and Disposal:
1. Store flammable liquids in approved, safety cans in small amounts. Store rags containing oils or solvents in covered metal containers. Clearly label all safety cans and containers.
 2. Any chemicals, liquids or compressed gases, and rags containing oils or solvents used on site shall be removed from the work area at the end of each work day, and stored in a separate protected area.
- F. Clean-Up: Maintain the work area free of combustibles, including, rubbish, paper, waste, etc., within area of operations.
1. Furnish and maintain rag buckets for disposal of rags with combustible liquids, oils or solvents.

2. If combustible material cannot be removed, supply fireproof blankets to cover such materials.
3. Take precautions to avoid accidental spillage. Any spillage of liquid materials must be reported to the Owner immediately, and cleaned in the proper manner respective to the type of material discharged.

3.6 HISTORIC TREATMENT, GENERAL

A. The principal aim of preservation work is to halt the process of deterioration and stabilize the item's condition, unless otherwise indicated. Repair is required where specifically indicated.

The following procedures shall be followed:

1. Retain as much existing material as possible; repair and consolidate rather than replace.
 2. Use additional material or structure to reinforce, strengthen, prop, tie, and support existing material or structure.
 3. Use the gentlest means and methods available, and use reversible processes wherever possible.
 4. Use traditional replacement materials and techniques. New work shall be distinguishable to the trained eye, on close inspection, from old work.
 5. Use repair and replacement materials that match remaining historic construction in all physical and visual aspects including material, form, color, texture and workmanship, unless otherwise indicate.
 6. Record the work before the procedure with preconstruction photos and during the work with periodic construction photos. Photographic documentation is specified above.
- B. Changes to distinctive interior materials, features, and spatial relationships shall be minimized.
- C. Alterations shall not destroy historic materials or features. New work shall be compatible in material, features, size, scale, and proportion to the property and environment.
1. New construction and materials shall be added in such a manner that, if removed in the future, the essential form and integrity of the historic materials would be unimpaired.
- D. Obtain Architect/Engineer and Owner's review and written approval before making changes or additions to construction or removing historic materials not indicated in the Project Documents.
- E. Notify Owner's Representative of visible changes in the integrity of material or components whether due to environmental causes including biological attack, UV degradation, freezing, or thawing; or due to structural defects including cracks, movement, or distortion.
1. Do not proceed with the work in question until directed by Owner.
- F. Where missing features are indicated to be repaired or replaced, provide features whose designs are based on accurate duplications rather than on conjectural designs, subject to the approval of Architect/Engineer and Owner.
- G. Where Work requires existing features to be removed, cleaned, and reused, perform these operations without damage to the material itself, to adjacent materials, or to the substrate.
- H. Identify new or replacement materials and features with inconspicuous, permanent marks to distinguish them from original materials. Record the legend of identification marks and the locations of these marks on Record Drawings.
- I. When cleaning, match samples of existing materials that have been cleaned and identified for acceptable cleaning levels. Avoid over-cleaning to prevent damage to existing materials during cleaning.

3.7 HISTORIC REMOVAL AND DISMANTLING, GENERAL

- A. Perform work according to the historic treatment program and approved mockups.
 - 1. Provide supports or reinforcement for existing construction that becomes temporarily weakened by the Work, until the Work is completed.
 - 2. Perform cutting by hand or with small power tools wherever possible. Cut holes and slots neatly to size required. Avoid over-cuts and minimum disturbance of adjacent work.
 - 3. Do not operate air compressors inside building, unless approved by Owner in each case.
 - 4. Do not drill or cut columns, beams, joints, girders, structural slabs, or other structural supporting elements, without having Contractor's professional engineer's written approval for each location before such work is begun.
- B. Water-Mist Sprinkling: Use water-mist sprinkling and other wet methods to control dust only with adequate, approved procedures and equipment that ensure that such water will not create a hazard or adversely affect other building areas or materials. Obtain prior approval of Architect/Engineer as some historic materials may be easily damaged by wet methods to control dust.
- C. Unacceptable Equipment: Keep equipment that is not permitted for historic removal or dismantling work away from the vicinity where such work is being performed.

3.8 SPECIAL REMOVAL PROCEDURES

- A. General: Exercise extreme caution in removing historic elements and materials of any kind attached to historic elements that are indicated to remain. Proceed as follows:
 - 1. Use only dismantling tools and procedures specified above.
 - 2. Unfasten items to be removed, in the opposite order from which they were installed.
 - 3. Unbolt bolted connections.
 - 4. Unscrew screw connections.
 - 5. Support each item as it becomes loosened to prevent stress and damage to the historic surface.
 - 6. Do not pry apart members whose finish will be damaged by chipping, scratching, crazing, or cracking, or whose structural integrity will thereby be impaired.
 - 7. Do not use oversized power tools to remove wall or floor areas for installation of new equipment.
 - 8. Do not remove nails from woodwork from the finished or exposed side. Drive nails through or pull from back side such that the nail head does not splinter the finished face.
 - 9. When prying cannot be avoided, protect finished surfaces and materials scheduled to remain or be reinstalled. Use sacrificial wood blocks, surface protection such as carpeting or other approved means agreed to by the Owner.
 - 10. Utilize blocks, steel plates, or other approved methods to spread loads to larger areas, to avoid stone/flatwork damage.
 - 11. If the work cannot proceed without some limited damage to the historic fabric, then the Contractor and the Owner shall clearly define and mutually agree to all methods which may damage historic fabric, prior to proceeding with the work. The Owner or designated representative, reserves the right to reject inappropriate methods not in conformance with accepted and recognized historic preservation or rehabilitation standards and/or practices.
 - 12. When conflicts arise regarding what may constitute appropriate methods, the most restrictive method shall prevail.
- B. Anchorages:
 - 1. Remove anchorages associated with removed items.
 - 2. Dismantle anchorages associated with dismantled items.
 - 3. In non-historic surfaces, patch holes created by anchorage removal or dismantling according to the requirements for new work, or as otherwise indicated.
 - 4. In historic surfaces, patch or repair holes created by anchorage removal or dismantling according to Section specific to the historic surface being patched, or as otherwise indicated.

3.9 BIRD, BAT, RAT EXCREMENT REMOVAL

- A. General: Before disturbing accumulated excrement, employ a qualified industrial hygienist to perform tests, make recommendations, and observe the work. Follow procedures required by authorities having jurisdiction and recommended by industrial hygienist.
 - 1. Removing Excrement:
 - a. Remove exterior excrement accumulations while building windows and other openings are closed or sealed off.
 - b. Before removal, treat excrement to kill pathogens. Dampen excrement to prevent particles becoming airborne.
 - c. Use only non-metallic tools such as plastic spatulas and brushes with natural fiber or nylon bristles.
 - d. Collect excrement debris as it is removed and legally dispose of off-site.
 - 2. Removing Excrement Stain: Clean as required in section pertaining to substrate material.

3.10 REMOVAL OF PROTECTION MATERIALS

- A. Notify Owner at least one week prior to removal of protection.
- B. Remove and dispose of all protective materials as directed and in accordance with Division 01 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal".
- C. Coordinate with Owner for observation and documentation of any damage which has occurred since the protection was installed.

3.11 FINAL INSPECTION AND CLEAN UP

- A. Coordinate with Owner for observation and documentation of any damage which has occurred since the protection was installed.
- B. Perform final cleaning as specified.
- C. Repair any damages occurred through the course of the Work at no additional cost to the Owner.

END OF SECTION 01 35 91

01 40 00 QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 1. Specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
 - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
 - 4. Specific test and inspection requirements are not specified in this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.
- C. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.
 - 1. Laboratory Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies constructed at testing facility to verify performance characteristics.
 - 2. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope erected separately from the building but on Project site, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.
 - 3. Room Mockups: Mockups of typical interior spaces complete with wall, floor, and ceiling finishes, doors, windows, millwork, casework, specialties, furnishings and equipment, and lighting.
- D. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.

- E. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- G. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- I. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
 - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- J. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For integrated exterior mockups, provide plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
 - 1. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
 - 2. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data: For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility sent to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:

1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the designated seismic system quality-assurance plan.
 2. Main wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the wind-force-resisting system quality-assurance plan.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
1. Specification Section number and title.
 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
 3. Description of test and inspection.
 4. Identification of applicable standards.
 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
 6. Number of tests and inspections required.
 7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
 8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
 9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice to Proceed or Intent to Award letter (whichever is first), and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's construction schedule.
- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified full-time personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections.
 2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the "Statement of Special Inspections."
 3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents.
- E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Date of issue.
 2. Project title and number.
 3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
 8. Complete test or inspection data.
 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.
 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
 13. Recommendations on retesting and re-inspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of technical representative making report.
 2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
 3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
 4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
 5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 6. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
 2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
 3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 4. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- D. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.

- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
 - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
 - 1. NRTL: A nationally recognized testing laboratory according to 29 CFR 1910.7.
 - 2. NVLAP: A testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
 - 1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:
 - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
 - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 - c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
 - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
 - e. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
 - f. When testing is complete, remove test specimens, assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.

2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.

K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:

1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed during the construction at Project.
4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
5. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
 - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.

1.10 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.

1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.
2. Payment for these services will be made from testing and inspecting allowances, or as authorized by Change Orders.
3. Costs for retesting and re-inspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor.

B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.

1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
2. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
 - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
5. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.

- C. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- D. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in pre-installation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- E. Retesting/Re-inspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and re-inspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- F. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
 - 1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 - 2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
 - 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
 - 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
 - 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
 - 6. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.
- G. Associated Services: Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
 - 1. Access to the Work.
 - 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
 - 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
 - 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
 - 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
 - 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
 - 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
 - 1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents as a component of Contractor's quality-control plan. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's construction schedule. Update as the Work progresses.
 - 1. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

1.11 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency and/or special inspector to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, and as follows:
1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviews the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
 2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
 5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
 6. Retesting and re-inspecting corrected work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 01 73 00 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 01 40 00

01 42 00 REFERENCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Reviewed": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "reviewed" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

1.3 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.

1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

1.4 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States."
- B. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. AABC - Associated Air Balance Council; www.aabc.com.
2. AAMA - American Architectural Manufacturers Association; www.aamanet.org.
3. AAPFCO - Association of American Plant Food Control Officials; www.aapfco.org.
4. AASHTO - American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; www.transportation.org.
5. AATCC - American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists; www.aatcc.org.
6. ABMA - American Bearing Manufacturers Association; www.americanbearings.org.
7. ACI - American Concrete Institute; (Formerly: ACI International); www.concrete.org.
8. ACPA - American Concrete Pipe Association; www.concrete-pipe.org.
9. AEIC - Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The); www.aeic.org.
10. AF&PA - American Forest & Paper Association; www.afandpa.org.
11. AGA - American Gas Association; www.aga.org.
12. AHAM - Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers; www.aham.org.
13. AHRI - Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (The); www.ahrinet.org.
14. AI - Asphalt Institute; www.asphaltinstitute.org.
15. AIA - American Institute of Architects (The); www.aia.org.
16. AISC - American Institute of Steel Construction; www.aisc.org.
17. AISI - American Iron and Steel Institute; www.steel.org.
18. AITC - American Institute of Timber Construction; www.aitc-glulam.org.
19. AMCA - Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; www.amca.org.
20. ANSI - American National Standards Institute; www.ansi.org.
21. AOSA - Association of Official Seed Analysts, Inc.; www.aosaseed.com.
22. APA - APA - The Engineered Wood Association; www.apawood.org.
23. APA - Architectural Precast Association; www.archprecast.org.
24. API - American Petroleum Institute; www.api.org.
25. ARI - Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
26. ARI - American Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
27. ARMA - Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association; www.asphaltroofing.org.
28. ASCE - American Society of Civil Engineers; www.asce.org.
29. ASCE/SEI - American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute; (See ASCE).
30. ASHRAE - American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers; www.ashrae.org.
31. ASME - ASME International; (American Society of Mechanical Engineers); www.asme.org.
32. ASSE - American Society of Safety Engineers (The); www.asse.org.
33. ASSE - American Society of Sanitary Engineering; www.asse-plumbing.org.
34. ASTM - ASTM International; (American Society for Testing and Materials International); www.astm.org.
35. ATIS - Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions; www.atis.org.
36. AWEA - American Wind Energy Association; www.awea.org.
37. AWI - Architectural Woodwork Institute; www.awinet.org.
38. AWMAC - Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada; www.awmac.com.
39. AWPAA - American Wood Protection Association; (Formerly: American Wood-Preservers' Association); www.awpa.com.

40. AWS - American Welding Society; www.aws.org.
41. AWWA - American Water Works Association; www.awwa.org.
42. BHMA - Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association; www.buildershardware.com.
43. BIA - Brick Industry Association (The); www.gobrick.com.
44. BICSI - BICSI, Inc.; www.bicsi.org.
45. BIFMA - BIFMA International; (Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association); www.bifma.com.
46. BISSC - Baking Industry Sanitation Standards Committee; www.bissc.org.
47. BWF - Badminton World Federation; (Formerly: International Badminton Federation); www.bwfbadminton.org.
48. CDA - Copper Development Association; www.copper.org.
49. CEA - Canadian Electricity Association; www.electricity.ca.
50. CEA - Consumer Electronics Association; www.ce.org.
51. CFFA - Chemical Fabrics & Film Association, Inc.; www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com.
52. CFSEI - Cold-Formed Steel Engineers Institute; www.cfsei.org.
53. CGA - Compressed Gas Association; www.cganet.com.
54. CIMA - Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association; www.cellulose.org.
55. CISCA - Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association; www.cisca.org.
56. CISPI - Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute; www.cispi.org.
57. CLFMI - Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute; www.chainlinkinfo.org.
58. CPA - Composite Panel Association; www.pbmdf.com.
59. CRI - Carpet and Rug Institute (The); www.carpet-rug.org.
60. CRRC - Cool Roof Rating Council; www.coolroofs.org.
61. CRSI - Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute; www.crsi.org.
62. CSA - Canadian Standards Association; www.csa.ca.
63. CSA - CSA International; (Formerly: IAS - International Approval Services); www.csa-international.org.
64. CSI - Construction Specifications Institute (The); www.csinet.org.
65. CSSB - Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau; www.cedarbureau.org.
66. CTI - Cooling Technology Institute; (Formerly: Cooling Tower Institute); www.cti.org.
67. CWC - Composite Wood Council; (See CPA).
68. DASMA - Door and Access Systems Manufacturers Association; www.dasma.com.
69. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute; www.dhi.org.
70. ECA - Electronic Components Association; (See ECIA).
71. ECAMA - Electronic Components Assemblies & Materials Association; (See ECIA).
72. ECIA ? Electronic Components Industry Association; www.eciaonline.org
73. EIA - Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
74. EIMA - EIFS Industry Members Association; www.eima.com.
75. EJMA - Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.ejma.org.
76. ESD - ESD Association; (Electrostatic Discharge Association); www.esda.org.
77. ESTA - Entertainment Services and Technology Association; (See PLASA).
78. EVO - Efficiency Valuation Organization; www.evo-world.org.
79. FM Approvals - FM Approvals LLC; www.fmglobal.com.
80. FM Global - FM Global; (Formerly: FMG - FM Global); www.fmglobal.com.
81. FRSA - Florida Roofing, Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors Association, Inc.; www.floridarooft.com.
82. FSA - Fluid Sealing Association; www.fluidsealing.com.
83. FSC - Forest Stewardship Council U.S.; www.fscus.org.
84. GA - Gypsum Association; www.gypsum.org.
85. GANA - Glass Association of North America; www.glasswebsite.com.
86. GS - Green Seal; www.greenseal.org.
87. HI - Hydraulic Institute; www.pumps.org.
88. HI/GAMA - Hydronics Institute/Gas Appliance Manufacturers Association; (See AHRI).
89. HMMA - Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association; (See NAAMM).
90. HPVA - Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association; www.hpva.org.
91. HPW - H. P. White Laboratory, Inc.; www.hpwhite.com.
92. IAPSC - International Association of Professional Security Consultants; www.iapsc.org.
93. IAS - International Accreditation Service; www.iasonline.org.
94. IAS - International Approval Services; (See CSA).

95. ICBO - International Conference of Building Officials; (See ICC).
96. ICC - International Code Council; www.iccsafe.org.
97. ICEA - Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc.; www.icea.net.
98. ICPA - International Cast Polymer Alliance; www.icpa-hq.org.
99. ICRI - International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc.; www.icri.org.
100. IEC - International Electrotechnical Commission; www.iec.ch.
101. IEEE - Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The); www.ieee.org.
102. IES - Illuminating Engineering Society; (Formerly: Illuminating Engineering Society of North America); www.ies.org.
103. IESNA - Illuminating Engineering Society of North America; (See IES).
104. IEST - Institute of Environmental Sciences and Technology; www.iest.org.
105. IGMA - Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance; www.igmaonline.org.
106. IGSHPA - International Ground Source Heat Pump Association; www.igshpa.okstate.edu.
107. ILI - Indiana Limestone Institute of America, Inc.; www.iliai.com.
108. Intertek - Intertek Group; (Formerly: ETL SEMCO; Intertek Testing Service NA); www.intertek.com.
109. ISA - International Society of Automation (The); (Formerly: Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society); www.isa.org.
110. ISAS - Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society (The); (See ISA).
111. ISFA - International Surface Fabricators Association; (Formerly: International Solid Surface Fabricators Association); www.isfanow.org.
112. ISO - International Organization for Standardization; www.iso.org.
113. ISSFA - International Solid Surface Fabricators Association; (See ISFA).
114. ITU - International Telecommunication Union; www.itu.int/home.
115. KCMA - Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association; www.kcma.org.
116. LMA - Laminating Materials Association; (See CPA).
117. LPI - Lightning Protection Institute; www.lightning.org.
118. MBMA - Metal Building Manufacturers Association; www.mbma.com.
119. MCA - Metal Construction Association; www.metalconstruction.org.
120. MFMA - Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.maplefloor.org.
121. MFMA - Metal Framing Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.metalframingmfg.org.
122. MHIA - Material Handling Industry of America; www.mhia.org.
123. MIA - Marble Institute of America; www.marble-institute.com.
124. MMPA - Moulding & Millwork Producers Association; (Formerly: Wood Moulding & Millwork Producers Association); www.wmmpa.com.
125. MPI - Master Painters Institute; www.paintinfo.com.
126. MSS - Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.; www.mss-hq.org.
127. NAAMM - National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers; www.naamm.org.
128. NACE - NACE International; (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International); www.nace.org.
129. NADCA - National Air Duct Cleaners Association; www.nadca.com.
130. NAIMA - North American Insulation Manufacturers Association; www.naima.org.
131. NBGQA - National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc.; www.nbgqa.com.
132. NCAA - National Collegiate Athletic Association (The); www.ncaa.org.
133. NCMA - National Concrete Masonry Association; www.ncma.org.
134. NEBB - National Environmental Balancing Bureau; www.nebb.org.
135. NECA - National Electrical Contractors Association; www.necanet.org.
136. NeLMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association; www.nelma.org.
137. NEMA - National Electrical Manufacturers Association; www.nema.org.
138. NETA - InterNational Electrical Testing Association; www.netaworld.org.
139. NFHS - National Federation of State High School Associations; www.nfhs.org.
140. NFPA - NFPA; (National Fire Protection Association); www.nfpa.org.
141. NFPA - NFPA International; (See NFPA).
142. NFRC - National Fenestration Rating Council; www.nfrc.org.
143. NHLA - National Hardwood Lumber Association; www.nhla.com.
144. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority; www.nlga.org.
145. NOFMA - National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association; (See NWFA).
146. NOMMA - National Ornamental & Miscellaneous Metals Association; www.nomma.org.

147. NRCA - National Roofing Contractors Association; www.nrca.net.
148. NRMCA - National Ready Mixed Concrete Association; www.nrmca.org.
149. NSF - NSF International; (National Sanitation Foundation International); www.nsf.org.
150. NSPE - National Society of Professional Engineers; www.nspe.org.
151. NSSGA - National Stone, Sand & Gravel Association; www.nssga.org.
152. NTMA - National Terrazzo & Mosaic Association, Inc. (The); www.ntma.com.
153. NWFA - National Wood Flooring Association; www.nwfa.org.
154. PCI - Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute; www.pci.org.
155. PDI - Plumbing & Drainage Institute; www.pdionline.org.
156. PLASA - PLASA; (Formerly: ESTA - Entertainment Services and Technology Association); www.plasa.org.
157. RCSC - Research Council on Structural Connections; www.boltcouncil.org.
158. RFCI - Resilient Floor Covering Institute; www.rfci.com.
159. RIS - Redwood Inspection Service; www.redwoodinspection.com.
160. SAE - SAE International; (Society of Automotive Engineers); www.sae.org.
161. SCTE - Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers; www.scte.org.
162. SDI - Steel Deck Institute; www.sdi.org.
163. SDI - Steel Door Institute; www.steeldoors.org.
164. SEFA - Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association; www.sefalabs.com.
165. SEI/ASCE - Structural Engineering Institute/American Society of Civil Engineers; (See ASCE).
166. SIA - Security Industry Association; www.siaonline.org.
167. SJI - Steel Joist Institute; www.steeljoist.org.
168. SMA - Screen Manufacturers Association; www.smainfo.org.
169. SMACNA - Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; www.smacna.org.
170. SMPTE - Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers; www.smpte.org.
171. SPFA - Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance; www.sprayfoam.org.
172. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau; www.spib.org.
173. SPRI - Single Ply Roofing Industry; www.spri.org.
174. SRCC - Solar Rating and Certification Corporation; www.solar-rating.org.
175. SSINA - Specialty Steel Industry of North America; www.ssina.com.
176. SSPC - SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings; www.sspc.org.
177. STI - Steel Tank Institute; www.steeltank.com.
178. SWI - Steel Window Institute; www.steelwindows.com.
179. SWPA - Submersible Wastewater Pump Association; www.swpa.org.
180. TCA - Tilt-Up Concrete Association; www.tilt-up.org.
181. TCNA - Tile Council of North America, Inc.; (Formerly: Tile Council of America); www.tileusa.com.
182. TEMA - Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.tema.org.
183. TIA - Telecommunications Industry Association; (Formerly: TIA/EIA - Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance); www.tiaonline.org.
184. TIA/EIA - Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
185. TMS - The Masonry Society; www.masonrysociety.org.
186. TPI - Truss Plate Institute; www.tpinst.org.
187. TPI - Turfgrass Producers International; www.turfgrasssod.org.
188. TRI - Tile Roofing Institute; (Formerly: National Tile Roofing Manufacturing Association); www.tilerroofing.org.
189. UBC - Uniform Building Code; (See ICC).
190. UL - Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; www.ul.com.
191. UNI - Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association; www.uni-bell.org.
192. USAV - USA Volleyball; www.usavolleyball.org.
193. USGBC - U.S. Green Building Council; www.usgbc.org.
194. USITT - United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc.; www.usitt.org.
195. WASTEC - Waste Equipment Technology Association; www.wastec.org.
196. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau; www.wclib.org.
197. WCMA - Window Covering Manufacturers Association; www.wcmanet.org.
198. WDMA - Window & Door Manufacturers Association; www.wdma.com.
199. WI - Woodwork Institute; (Formerly: WIC - Woodwork Institute of California); www.wicnet.org.
200. WMMPA - Wood Moulding & Millwork Producers Association; (See MMPA).
201. WSRCA - Western States Roofing Contractors Association; www.wsrca.com.

202. WPA - Western Wood Products Association; www.wwpa.org.

C. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. DIN - Deutsches Institut for Normung e.V.; www.din.de.
2. IAPMO - International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials; www.iapmo.org.
3. ICC - International Code Council; www.iccsafe.org.
4. ICC-ES - ICC Evaluation Service, LLC; www.icc-es.org.

D. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Information is subject to change and is up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. COE - Army Corps of Engineers; www.usace.army.mil.
2. CPSC - Consumer Product Safety Commission; www.cpsc.gov.
3. DOC - Department of Commerce; National Institute of Standards and Technology; www.nist.gov.
4. DOD - Department of Defense; <http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil>.
5. DOE - Department of Energy; www.energy.gov.
6. EPA - Environmental Protection Agency; www.epa.gov.
7. FAA - Federal Aviation Administration; www.faa.gov.
8. FG - Federal Government Publications; www.gpo.gov.
9. GSA - General Services Administration; www.gsa.gov.
10. HUD - Department of Housing and Urban Development; www.hud.gov.
11. LBL - Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory; Environmental Energy Technologies Division; <http://eetd.lbl.gov>.
12. OSHA - Occupational Safety & Health Administration; www.osha.gov.
13. SD - Department of State; www.state.gov.
14. TRB - Transportation Research Board; National Cooperative Highway Research Program; www.trb.org.
15. USDA - Department of Agriculture; Agriculture Research Service; U.S. Salinity Laboratory; www.ars.usda.gov.
16. USDA - Department of Agriculture; Rural Utilities Service; www.usda.gov.
17. USDJ - Department of Justice; Office of Justice Programs; National Institute of Justice; www.ojp.usdoj.gov.
18. USP - U.S. Pharmacopeia; www.usp.org.
19. USPS - United States Postal Service; www.usps.com.

E. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. CFR - Code of Federal Regulations; Available from Government Printing Office; www.gpo.gov/fdsys.
2. DOD - Department of Defense; Military Specifications and Standards; Available from Department of Defense Single Stock Point; <http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil>.
3. DSCC - Defense Supply Center Columbus; (See FS).
4. FED-STD - Federal Standard; (See FS).
5. FS - Federal Specification; Available from Department of Defense Single Stock Point; <http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil>.
 - a. Available from Defense Standardization Program; www.dsp.dla.mil.
 - b. Available from General Services Administration; www.gsa.gov.
 - c. Available from National Institute of Building Sciences/Whole Building Design Guide; www.wbdg.org/ccb.
6. MILSPEC - Military Specification and Standards; (See DOD).
7. USAB - United States Access Board; www.access-board.gov.

8. USATBCB - U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board; (See USAB).

F. State Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 42 00

01 50 00 TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 10 00 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.

1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Architect, occupants of Project, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Water Service: Contractor is allowed to use the existing water service and shall coordinate with all necessary entities for construction operations.
- C. Electric Power Service: Contractor is allowed to use the existing electricity and shall coordinate with all necessary entities for construction operations.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Area Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for construction personnel. Parking will be allowed in the north parking lot across Musser Street from the Capitol building.
- B. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
- C. Moisture-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage.
 - 1. Describe delivery, handling, and storage provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.
 - 2. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and replacing water-damaged Work.
 - 3. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, plastering, and terrazzo grinding, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.

- D. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Identify further options if proposed measures are later determined to be inadequate. Include the following:
1. Locations of dust-control partitions at each phase of work.
 2. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
 3. Location of proposed air-filtration system discharge.
 4. Waste handling procedures.
 5. Other dust-control measures.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.
- C. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Dust-Control Adhesive-Surface Walk-off Mats: Provide mats minimum 36 by 60 inches.

2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations, as needed.
1. Store combustible materials apart and away from building.
 2. Contractor parking and staging areas are identified on the G101 Project Data sheet. Coordinate with Dangberg Ranch personnel for exact area and size needed for designated contractor parking and staging.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
 - 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 01 10 00 "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
 - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Water Service: Connect to Owner's existing water service facilities. Clean and maintain water service facilities in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
- C. Sanitary Facilities: Contractor to provide temporary sanitary facilities for all employees and sub-contractors. Final quantity to be determined by General Contractor, but no less than one (1) facility. Coordinate placement of sanitary facilities with State Capitol security personnel.
- D. Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
- E. Isolation of Work Areas in Occupied Facilities: Prevent dust, fumes, and odors from entering occupied areas.
 - 1. Prior to commencing work, isolate the HVAC system in area where work is to be performed according to coordination drawings.
 - a. Disconnect supply and return ductwork in work area from HVAC systems servicing occupied areas if necessary.
 - b. Maintain negative air pressure within work area using HEPA-equipped air-filtration units, starting with commencement of temporary partition construction, and continuing until removal of temporary partitions is complete.
 - 2. Maintain dust partitions during the Work. Use vacuum collection attachments on dust-producing equipment. Isolate limited work within occupied areas using portable dust-containment devices.
 - 3. Perform daily construction cleanup and final cleanup using approved, HEPA-filter-equipped vacuum equipment.
- F. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.
 - 1. Provide dehumidification systems when required to reduce substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes.

- G. Electric Power Service: Connect to Owner's existing electric power service. Maintain equipment in a condition acceptable to Owner.
- H. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
 - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
 - 2. Install lighting for Project identification sign.

3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Use of Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
- C. Parking: Use designated areas of Owner's existing parking areas for construction personnel.
- D. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
 - 1. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
 - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
 - 2. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.
- E. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with progress cleaning requirements in Section 01 73 00 "Execution" and requirements specified in Section 01 74 19 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- F. Existing Stair Usage: Use of Owner's existing stairs will be permitted, provided stairs are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore stairs to condition existing before initial use.
 - 1. Provide protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, or other procedures to protect stairs and to maintain means of egress. If stairs become damaged, restore damaged areas so no evidence remains of correction work.

3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.

1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Section 01 10 00 "Summary."
- C. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.
- D. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each work day.
- E. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- F. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- G. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weather-tight enclosure for building exterior.
 1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- H. Temporary Partitions: Provide floor-to-ceiling dustproof partitions to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate areas occupied by visitors and Museum staff from fumes and noise.
 1. Construct dustproof partitions with gypsum wallboard with joints taped on occupied side, and fire-retardant-treated plywood on construction operations side.
 2. Construct dustproof partitions with two layers of 6-mil polyethylene sheet on each side. Cover floor with two layers of 6-mil polyethylene sheet, extending sheets 18 inches up the sidewalls. Overlap and tape full length of joints. Cover floor with fire-retardant-treated plywood.
 - a. Construct vestibule and airlock at each entrance through temporary partition with not less than 48 inches between doors. Maintain water-dampened foot mats in vestibule.
 3. Where fire-resistance-rated temporary partitions are indicated or are required by authorities having jurisdiction, construct partitions according to the rated assemblies.
 4. Insulate partitions to control noise transmission to occupied areas.
 5. Seal joints and perimeter. Equip partitions with gasketed dustproof doors and security locks where openings are required.
 6. Protect air-handling equipment.
 7. Provide walk-off mats at each entrance through temporary partition.
- I. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
 1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas.
 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
 4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

3.5 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Avoid trapping water in finished work. Document visible signs of mold that may appear during construction.
- B. Exposed Construction Phase: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
 - 1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
 - 2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
 - 3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
 - 4. Remove standing water from decks.
 - 5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Phase: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
 - 1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
 - 2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
 - 3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
 - 4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
 - 5. Do not install material that is wet.
 - 6. Discard, replace, or clean stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
 - 7. Perform work in a sequence that allows any wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in drywall or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Phase of Construction: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
 - 1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
 - 2. Use permanent HVAC system to control humidity.
 - 3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
 - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective.
 - b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
 - c. Remove materials that cannot be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

3.6 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
 - 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.

- C. Operate Project-identification-sign lighting daily from dusk until 12:00 midnight.
- D. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- E. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
 - 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
 - 2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 01 50 00

01 60 00 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 42 00 "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
 - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
 - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
 - 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Comparable Product Requests: Submit request for consideration of each comparable product. Identify product, or fabrication, or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 1. Include data to indicate compliance with the requirements specified in "Comparable Products" Article.
 - 2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within one week of receipt of a comparable product request. Architect will notify Contractor

of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product request within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.

- a. Form of Approval: As specified in Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures."
- b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.

- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.

1. Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Delivery and Handling:

1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.

- C. Storage:

1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
4. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
7. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
 - 2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
 - 2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
 - 3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
 - 1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
 - 2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
 - 3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
 - 4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
 - 5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
 - 6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," or "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:
 - 1. Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - 2. Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - 3. Products:
 - a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable

products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.

- b. Non-restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed, or an unnamed product, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product.

4. Manufacturers:

- a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
- b. Non-restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed, or a product by an unnamed manufacturer, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed manufacturer's product.

- 5. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.

- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample", provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.

- D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- 1. Evidence that the proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents that it is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce the indicated results, and that it is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- 2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant qualities include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
- 3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
- 4. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
- 5. Samples, if requested.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 60 00

01 73 00 EXECUTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Construction layout.
 - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
 - 3. Installation of the Work.
 - 4. Cutting and patching.
 - 5. Progress cleaning.
 - 6. Starting and adjusting.
 - 7. Protection of installed construction.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 10 00 "Summary" for limits on use of Project site.
 - 2. Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
 - 3. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, and final cleaning.
 - 4. Section 02 41 19 "Selective Demolition" for demolition and removal of selected portions of the building.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of other work.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Cutting and Patching Plan: Submit plan describing procedures at least 10 days prior to the time cutting and patching will be performed. Include the following information:
 - 1. Extent: Describe reason for and extent of each occurrence of cutting and patching.
 - 2. Changes to In-Place Construction: Describe anticipated results. Include changes to structural elements and operating components as well as changes in building appearance and other significant visual elements.
 - 3. Products: List products to be used for patching and firms or entities that will perform patching work.
 - 4. Dates: Indicate when cutting and patching will be performed.

5. Utilities and Mechanical and Electrical Systems: List services and systems that cutting and patching procedures will disturb or affect. List services and systems that will be relocated and those that will be temporarily out of service. Indicate length of time permanent services and systems will be disrupted.
 - a. Include description of provisions for temporary services and systems during interruption of permanent services and systems.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
 1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await confirmation from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection
 2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operational elements include the following:
 - a. Primary operational systems and equipment.
 - b. Fire separation assemblies.
 - c. Air or smoke barriers.
 - d. Fire-suppression systems.
 - e. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
 - f. Control systems.
 - g. Communication systems.
 - h. Fire-detection and -alarm systems.
 - i. Conveying systems.
 - j. Electrical wiring systems.
 - k. Operating systems of special construction.
 3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
 - b. Membranes and flashings.
 - c. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
 - d. Sprayed fire-resistive material.
 - e. Equipment supports.
 - f. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
 - g. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
 4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- B. Cutting and Patching Conference: Before proceeding, meet at Project site with parties involved in cutting and patching, including mechanical and electrical trades. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning site-work, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, irrigation, mechanical, plumbing, and electrical, and other construction affecting the Work.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
 - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
 - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
 - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
 - 1. Description of the Work.
 - 2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
 - 3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
 - 4. Recommended corrections.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination."

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
 - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.
 - 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
 - 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
 - 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

3.4 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.

1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Adjacent Occupied Areas: Where interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas is unavoidable, coordinate cutting and patching according to requirements in Section 01 10 00 "Summary."
- F. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.5 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
 - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
 4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 01 74 19 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction; completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

3.6 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 01 73 00

01 74 19 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
 - 1. Disposing of non-hazardous demolition and construction waste.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 02 41 19 "Selective Demolition" for disposition of waste resulting from partial demolition of buildings, structures, and site improvements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Construction Waste: Building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- B. Demolition Waste: Building and site improvement materials resulting from demolition or selective demolition operations.
- C. Disposal: Removal off-site of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse.
- E. Salvage: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent sale or reuse in another facility.
- F. Salvage and Reuse: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent incorporation into the Work.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Waste Management Plan: Submit plan within 7 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. General: Implement approved waste management plan. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.
 - 1. Comply with operation, termination, and removal requirements in Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
 - 1. Designate and label specific areas on Project site necessary for separating materials.
 - 2. Comply with Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.
- C. Waste Management in Historic Zones or Areas: Hauling equipment and other materials shall be of sizes that clear surfaces within historic spaces, areas, rooms, and openings, by 12 inches or more.

3.2 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
 - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.
- C. Disposal: Remove waste materials from Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

END OF SECTION 01 74 19

01 77 00 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
 - 2. Final completion procedures.
 - 3. Warranties.
 - 4. Final cleaning.
 - 5. Repair of the Work.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 32 33 "Photographic Documentation" for submitting final completion construction photographic documentation.
 - 2. Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for progress cleaning of Project site.
 - 3. Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.
 - 4. Section 01 78 39 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For cleaning agents.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- C. Field Report: For pest control inspection.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

1.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
 - 1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
 - 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, final completion construction photographic documentation, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
 - 3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
 - 4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
 - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. .
 - 5. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
 - 6. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
 - 1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
 - 2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
 - 3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
 - 4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
 - 5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
 - 6. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
 - 7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
 - 8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
 - 9. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
 - 10. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on

Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Re-inspection: Request re-inspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
 1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
 2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
 3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
 4. Submit pest-control final inspection report.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
 1. Re-inspection: Request re-inspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

1.8 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
 1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor.
 2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
 3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Page number.
 4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file. Architect will return annotated file.

1.9 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
 - 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
 - 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
 - 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
 - 4. Warranty Electronic File: Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
- D. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
 - 1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
 - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.

- c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
- d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
- e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
- f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
- g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
- h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
- i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
- j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
- k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
- l. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
- m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
- n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
- o. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
 - 1) Clean HVAC system in compliance with NADCA Standard 1992-01. Provide written report on completion of cleaning.
- p. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
- q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.

- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.
- D. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 01 74 19 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
 - 1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
 - 2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
 - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.

3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

END OF SECTION 01 77 00

01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
 - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
 - 2. Emergency manuals.
 - 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 - 4. Product maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
 - 1. Architect will comment on whether content of operations and maintenance submittals are acceptable.
 - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:
 - 1. PDF electronic file. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
 - a. Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.
 - b. Enable inserted reviewer comments on draft submittals.

2. Three paper copies. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves. Architect will return two copies.
- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.
 1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY

- A. Directory: Prepare a single, comprehensive directory of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials, listing items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
 1. List of documents.
 2. List of systems.
 3. List of equipment.
 4. Table of contents.
- B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
- C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
- D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

2.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
 1. Title page.
 2. Table of contents.
 3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
 1. Subject matter included in manual.
 2. Name and address of Project.

3. Name and address of Owner.
 4. Date of submittal.
 5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
 6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
 7. Name and contact information for Architect.
 8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.
 9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
 10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.
- F. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard copy, bound and labeled volumes.
1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
 - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
 - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents, and indicate Specification Section number on bottom of spine. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
 2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
 3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment.
 4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch white bond paper.
 5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
 - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.

- b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

2.3 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
 - 1. Type of emergency.
 - 2. Emergency instructions.
 - 3. Emergency procedures.
- B. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
 - 1. Fire.
 - 2. Flood.
 - 3. Gas leak.
 - 4. Water leak.
 - 5. Power failure.
 - 6. Water outage.
 - 7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
 - 8. Chemical release or spill.
- C. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- D. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
 - 1. Instructions on stopping.
 - 2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 - 3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
 - 4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - 5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

2.4 OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
 - 1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
 - 2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
 - 3. Operating standards.
 - 4. Operating procedures.
 - 5. Operating logs.
 - 6. Wiring diagrams.
 - 7. Control diagrams.
 - 8. Piped system diagrams.
 - 9. Precautions against improper use.
 - 10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- B. Descriptions: Include the following:
 - 1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.

2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
4. Equipment function.
5. Operating characteristics.
6. Limiting conditions.
7. Performance curves.
8. Engineering data and tests.
9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Startup procedures.
2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
4. Regulation and control procedures.
5. Instructions on stopping.
6. Normal shutdown instructions.
7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.

2.5 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.

B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Product name and model number.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Color, pattern, and texture.
4. Material and chemical composition.
5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.

D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:

1. Inspection procedures.
2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
5. Repair instructions.

E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.

F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

2.6 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
 1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
 1. Test and inspection instructions.
 2. Troubleshooting guide.
 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
 1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
 2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- C. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 - 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- E. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
 - 1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
- F. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
 - 1. Do not use original project record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared record Drawings in Section 01 78 39 "Project Record Documents."
- G. Comply with Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

END OF SECTION 01 78 23

01 78 39 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
 - 1. Record Drawings.
 - 2. Record Specifications.
 - 3. Record Product Data.
 - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
 - 2. Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set(s) of marked-up record prints.
 - 2. Number of Copies: Submit copies of record Drawings as follows:
 - a. Initial Submittal:
 - 1) Submit one paper-copy set(s) of marked-up record prints.
 - 2) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one of file prints.
 - 3) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
 - b. Final Submittal:
 - 1) Submit one paper-copy set(s) of marked-up record prints.
 - 2) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one of file prints.
 - a) Print each drawing file full size, whether or not changes and additional information was recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit one paper copy of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit one paper copy of each submittal.

1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.
- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit one paper copy of each submittal.
- E. Reports: Submit written report weekly indicating items incorporated into project record documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including revisions, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
 - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
 - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
 - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
 - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
 - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding archive photographic documentation.
 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
 - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
 - c. Depths of foundations below first floor.
 - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
 - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
 - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
 - g. Actual equipment locations.
 - h. Duct size and routing.
 - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
 - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
 - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
 - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
 - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
 - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
 4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.

- B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
1. Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as the original Contract Drawings.
 2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file.
 3. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
 4. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.
 5. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.
 - a. See Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for requirements related to use of Architect's digital data files.
 - b. Architect will provide data file layer information. Record markups in separate layers.
- C. Newly Prepared Record Drawings: Prepare new Drawings instead of preparing record Drawings where Architect determines that neither the original Contract Drawings nor Shop Drawings are suitable to show actual installation.
1. New Drawings may be required when a Change Order is issued as a result of accepting an alternate, substitution, or other modification.
 2. Consult Architect for proper scale and scope of detailing and notations required to record the actual physical installation and its relation to other construction. Integrate newly prepared record Drawings into record Drawing sets; comply with procedures for formatting, organizing, copying, binding, and submitting.
- D. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
1. Record Prints: Organize record prints and newly prepared record Drawings into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
 2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file.
 3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
 4. Identification: As follows:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
 - d. Name of Architect.
 - e. Name of Contractor.

2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
 3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.

4. For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
5. Note related Change Orders, record Product Data, and record Drawings where applicable.

B. Format: Submit record Specifications as paper copy.

2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.

1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
3. Note related Change Orders, record Specifications, and record Drawings where applicable.

B. Format: Submit record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file.

1. Include record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of record Product Data.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.

B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as PDF electronic file.

1. Include miscellaneous record submittals directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of miscellaneous record submittals.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.

B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

END OF SECTION 01 78 39

06 30 00.01 EPOXY REPAIR FOR DETERIORATION AND DECAY IN WOODEN MEMBERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.
- C. U.S. Department of the Interior National Park Service, Preservation Brief #9.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This procedure includes guidance on stabilizing decayed wood members with epoxy consolidant and filler.
- B. For reference, as needed refer to the American Wood Protection Association www.awpa.com
- C. Deterioration and decay in wood results from moisture infiltration, accompanying fungal growth and insect infestation. Failure of paint, caulk and sealant leaves the wood surface underneath it susceptible to these perils.
- D. Some sources of moisture may include the original moisture in green wood, rainwater, condensation, ground water, piped water, and water released by water-conducting fungus through the process of decay itself.
- E. Epoxy repair may be appropriate if:
 - 1. The piece is a structural member. Epoxy has adequate compression strength, but is not the best choice to repair a member in tension. In this case, replacement is usually a better option.
 - 2. The wood to be repaired is to remain unpainted (as the epoxy is quite different in appearance than wood). In this case, appearances will matter to a greater degree, and the wood should be selectively replaced.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable manufacturers include, but are not limited to:
 - 1. Advanced Repair Technology, Inc.
 - 2. Abatron, Inc.
 - 3. ConServ Epoxy LLC
 - 4. Or equal Manufacturer with equal products.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Epoxy consolidant and epoxy filler, both are multiple part compounds. Purchase by the gallon unless a large amount of epoxying needs to be done. Use one of the following, or approved equal:

1. Advance Repair Technology, Inc.:
 - a. The products of Advance Repair Technology, Inc. are recommended for use on smaller members such as window sashes where deep penetration of consolidant is not required. The quick drying feature is an advantage for small, but repetitive, jobs. Abatron carries many different types of wood consolidants with varying degrees of penetration.
 - 1) Flexible Cell-Bonding Primer.
 - 2) Flexible Repair Compound.
 - 3) Other Advance Repair Technology, Inc. products as needed or required.
 2. Abatron, Inc.:
 - a. The products of Abatron, Inc. are recommended for use on smaller members such as window sashes where deep penetration of consolidant is not required. The quick drying feature is an advantage for small, but repetitive, jobs. Abatron carries many different types of wood consolidants with varying degrees of penetration.
 - 1) Liquidwood-1 Consolidant
 - 2) Woodepox-2 Adhesive Paste
 - 3) Other Abatron products as needed or required.
 3. ConServ Epoxy LLC:
 - a. The products of ConServ Epoxy LLC are recommended for treatment of thicker wood such as window sills. Because of its slower curing time, it allows for deeper penetration into members.
 - 1) ConServ (T) Flexible Consolidant 100
 - 2) ConServe (T) Flexible Patch 200
 - 3) Other ConServ Epoxy products as needed or required.
- B. Follow all manufacturers written instructions for use, preparation, and application of wood repair products.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Plastic bottles, like those used for hair dye, to apply the consolidant; having many on hand is recommended. Cleaning of the bottles for reuse is possible.
- B. Applicator bottles: Available from drug store and sold for hair dye application usually in 8 fl. oz. size; Also available in bulk from Roux Laboratories (see paragraph 2.01 (a.) above. Roux hair-color applicators lend themselves easily to cleaning and reuse.
- C. Rags of different sizes to wipe up spills before epoxy has a chance to harden, small rags are recommended for quick one time uses such as wiping off spouts and caps.
- D. Thin wooden sticks, approximately 8" long for scooping out paste and mixing consolidant.
- E. Goggles and a respirator for protection from fumes.
- F. Putty knives for application of filler.
- G. Channel lock pliers for opening stuck caps.
- H. Allen wrench to clean out cap holes.
- I. Needle nose pliers to pull out hardened epoxy.
- J. 1/8"x8"x12" Masonite boards for mixing paste filler.
- K. Carbon dioxide fire extinguisher: Curing epoxy creates heat that may cause fire.
- L. Rotary saw.

- M. Air compressor.
- N. Drill.
- O. Stiff bristle brushes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Detect rot using the "Pick Test":
 - 1. Insert an ice pick into the wood at a slight angle.
 - 2. Lift the pick out. If the wood splinters in long pieces, the wood is ok. If the wood snaps where the pick is being lifted, the wood is decayed.
- B. When rot is discovered:
 - 1. Determine the source of moisture infiltration and eliminate it.
 - a. If rot is only present on the surface, drying is all that is necessary to stop the spread of decay and kill off any growth.
 - 2. If source of moisture is unknown, treat the wood with a preservative.
 - a. Preservatives are caustic chemicals and should be handled with care.
 - b. A particularly dangerous wood preserving chemical used frequently in the past was called pentachlorophenol. It is now a controlled industrial preservative, considered toxic, and any use except by specially trained conservators should be avoided at all costs. If you have old stock of this chemical in storage, proper means of disposal should be sought out. CAUTION: THIS CHEMICAL IS CARCINOGENIC AND ITS USE IS BANNED IN MANY STATES. See <https://www.epa.gov/haps/health-effects-notebook-hazardous-air-pollutants> and http://www.epa.gov/pesticides/factsheets/chemicals/pentachlorophenol_main.htm
 - 3. Preservatives will eliminate fungal growth, but will not restore strength to deteriorated wood material.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Always follow the recommendations for use provided by the manufacturer of the filler or consolidant chosen.
 - 1. Dry affected wood member completely to arrest further decay. Dry in place if possible -or- remove the member and keep in a cool dry place until dry.

CAUTION: IF THIS PRECAUTION IS NOT TAKEN, THE EPOXY CAN ACTUALLY TRAP MOISTURE UNDERNEATH IT IN THE WOOD FIBERS AND ACCELERATE THE DECAY PROCESS.
 - 2. Have all materials at hand before the mixing process begins.
 - 3. Label all caps and lids so that a cap or lid is not placed on the wrong container or it may remain there permanently.

3.3 ERECTION, INSTALLATION, APPLICATION

CAUTION: AS EPOXIES CURE, HEAT IS PRODUCED. FOR THIS REASON, EPOXIES SHOULD BE USED IN SMALL QUANTITIES TO DETER EXTENSIVE HEAT BUILD-UP. CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN USING EPOXY ON A HOT DAY.

- A. Use caution when disposing of epoxy-covered components such as mixing and application bottles, resin-coated clean-up towels, papers and wood scraps.
- B. Repair decayed wood using epoxy wood consolidant. Always follow the recommendations for use provided by the manufacturer of the filler or consolidant chosen.

- 1. Drill 1/4" or 3/16" holes in affected wood to receive epoxy consolidant:
 - a. Drill holes at an angle and spaced approximately 2" on center in staggered rows. The top of one hole should line up with the bottom of the next hole.

CAUTION: BE SURE NOT TO DRILL THROUGH THE ENTIRE SURFACE FOR CONSOLIDANT WILL LEAK OUT FROM BEHIND.

- b. Dam any surface cracks with oil clay (this is old-fashioned modeling clay) so that epoxy will not leak.
- 2. Remove sawdust and dirt from drilled holes by blowing (by mouth or with the aid of a common drinking straw), vacuuming, or use of stiff bristle brushes.
- 3. Following manufacturer's instructions, thoroughly mix the consolidant components.
- 4. Using a large plastic syringe or squeeze bottle and tube spout, carefully squirt the consolidant into the pre-drilled holes. Completely saturate the wood, moving from hole to hole refilling until the wood can hold no more. More than one application may be needed to force air out of voids.
- 5. Wipe off any excess consolidant or spills and cover the treated area to protect until cured as directed by epoxy manufacturer.
- 6. If severed pieces need to be re-attached, glue them in place with a mixture of consolidant and filler, according to the manufacturer's instructions.

- C. When the consolidant has cured, fill the voids in the surface with epoxy filler (wood-epoxy putty):

- 1. Mix the two part epoxy filler according to manufacturer's instructions until consistency of a glazing compound is uniform and compound can be worked with a putty knife.
- 2. Apply the filler to the surface:
 - a. For large voids, apply filler in 1" thick layers to reduce heat build-up that may undermine repairs.
 - b. Build up filler layers slightly above the wood surface to allow for planing and sanding smooth after it has cured.
- 3. When the filler has cured, sand or plane the surface smooth.
- 4. Match the profile of the existing wood trim, molding, or other wood component.
- 5. Apply a wood preservative to the surrounding wood surfaces, prime and paint the entire surface.

END OF SECTION 06 30 00.01

07 92 00 JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Silicone joint sealants.
 - 2. Silyl-terminated polyether joint sealants.

1.3 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch- wide joints formed between two 6-inch- long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
 - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 - 4. Joint-sealant color.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
 - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.

4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use T, NT, M, A, G, and O: Single-component, non-sag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, non-traffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920,.
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Franklin International; Titebond Ultimate MP Sealant. or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. BASF Corporation.
 - b. Pecora Corporation.
 - c. Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.
 - d. Or equal manufacturer with equal product.

2.3 SILYL-TERMINATED POLYETHER (STPE) JOINT SEALANTS

- A. STPE, S, NS, 50, NT: Single-component, non-sag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, non-traffic-use, silyl-terminated polyether joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide BASF Corporation; Sonolastic NP150 with VLM Technology or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation.
 - b. Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.
 - c. Franklin International.
 - d. Or equal manufacturer with equal product.

2.4 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Non-staining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) or as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Non-porous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Non-staining, non-absorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.
 - c. Wood.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
 - 4. Clean non-porous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Non-porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Non-sag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
 - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
 - 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C1193 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Provide flush joint profile according to Figure 8B in ASTM C1193.
 - 5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and according to Figure 8C in ASTM C1193.
 - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
 - 1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
 - a. Perform 1 tests for the first 10 feet of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
 - b. Perform one test for each 100 feet of joint length thereafter.
 - 2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C1521.
 - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.

3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
 - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
 - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
 - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
 4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
 5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.
- B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or non-compliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior silicone.

1. Joint Locations:

- a. Wood.

- B. Joint-Sealant Application: STPE.

1. Joint Locations:

- a. Masonry.
- b. Metal.

END OF SECTION 07 92 00

09 91 13 EXTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.
- C. U.S. Department of the Interior National Park Service, Preservation Brief #10.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
 - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat.
 - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
 - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
 - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
 - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- C. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gallon of each material and color applied.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Sherwin-Williams Company, ProCryl Universal Primer, Pro Industrial Water-based Alkyd Urethane, Exterior Latex Wood Primer, and Pro Industrial Acrylic or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Pittsburgh Paints.
 - 2. Benjamin Moore.
 - 3. Or equal manufacturer with equal products.
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to products listed in the Exterior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
 - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. Colors: Match existing field conditions.

1. Accent color is a green color (match existing color).
2. Siding, wood, and trim is a white color (match existing siding color).

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:

1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 1. Wood: 15 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 1. Remove incompatible primers and re-prime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.

- D. Metal Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and flaking paint. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer and the Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties and the Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, and Reconstructing Historic Buildings.
- E. Wood Substrates:
 - 1. Scrape and clean knots. Before applying primer, apply coat of knot sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use in paint system indicated.
 - 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
 - 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
 - 4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
 - 3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
 - 4. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
 - 5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 - 6. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat, but tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
 - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
 - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Metal Substrates; Include but are not limited to flashing, ridge cap and trim.

- 1. Water-based Alkyd Urethane Enamel System:

- a. Prime Coat: Universal Primer.

- 1) Sherwin Williams; KEM Bond HS Primer B50WZ0004.
 - 2) Off White.

- b. Intermediate Coat: Acrylic, exterior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Alkyd Urethane.

- 1) Sherwin Williams; Pro Industrial Water-based Alkyd Urethane B53-1050 Gloss.

- B. Wood Substrates; Include but are not limited to siding, wood windows, wood trim, wood moldings, wood balustrades, and wood doors.

- 1. Water-based Alkyd Urethane Enamel System: Acrylic System:

- a. Prime Coat: Latex.

- 1) Sherwin Williams; Exterior Latex Wood Primer B-42W0841.
 - 2) Off White.

- b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Wood Trim: Alkyd Urethane:

- 1) Sherwin Williams; Pro Industrial Water-based Alkyd Urethane B53-1050, gloss.

- d. Topcoat Wood: Acrylic:

- 1) Sherwin Williams; Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-gloss B66-600, gloss.

END OF SECTION 09 91 13

09 93 00 STAINING AND TRANSPARENT FINISHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring & Reconstructing Historic Buildings.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and application of wood stains and transparent finishes.
 - 1. Exterior Substrates:
 - a. Wood shingles and shakes.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for stains and transparent finishes on concrete floors.
 - 2. Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings" for transparent high-performance coatings on concrete floors and clay masonry.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than 5 units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 1. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
 - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of finish system and in each color and gloss of finish required.
 - 1. Submit Samples on representative samples of actual wood substrates, 12 inches.
 - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.

3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

- D. Product List: Cross-reference to finish system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Stains and Transparent Finishes: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each finish system indicated and each color selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each type of finish system and substrate.
 - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 1 sq. ft..
 - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
2. Final approval of stain color selections will be based on mockups.
 - a. If preliminary stain color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional stain colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply finishes only when temperature of surfaces to be finished and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply finishes when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point, or to damp or wet surfaces.
- C. Do not apply exterior finishes in snow, rain, fog, or mist

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cabot
2. Sherwin-Williams Company
3. or Equal

B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product listed in wood finish systems schedules for the product category indicated.

1. Water-repellent
2. Deep-penetrating oil
3. Fade resistant
4. Extra-pigmented oil stain for rich color and superior durability

2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."

B. Material Compatibility:

1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

C. Stain Colors: Semi solid stain Neutral Base tinted Evergreen.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Exterior Wood Substrates: 15 percent, when measured with an electronic moisture meter.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with finish application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 1. Beginning finish application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.

- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and finishing.
 - 1. After completing finishing operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean and prepare surfaces to be finished according to manufacturer's written instructions for each substrate condition and as specified.
 - 1. Remove dust, dirt, oil, and grease by washing with a detergent solution; rinse thoroughly with clean water and allow to dry. Remove grade stamps and pencil marks by sanding lightly. Remove loose wood fibers by brushing.
 - 2. Remove mildew by scrubbing with a commercial wash formulated for mildew removal and as recommended by stain manufacturer.
- D. Exterior Wood Substrates:
 - 1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
 - 2. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
 - a. For solid hide stained wood, stain edges and ends after priming.
 - b. For varnish-coated stained wood, stain edges and ends and prime with varnish. Prime undersides and backsides with varnish.
 - 3. Countersink steel nails, if used, and fill with putty or plastic wood filler tinted to final color. Sand smooth when dried.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply finishes according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for finish and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Finish surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces.
 - 3. Do not apply finishes over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
- B. Apply finishes to produce surface films without cloudiness, holidays, lap marks, brush marks, runs, ropiness, or other surface imperfections.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing finish application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered materials by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from finish application. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced finished wood surfaces.

END OF SECTION 09 93 00